English Vocabulary in Use

pre-intermediate & intermediate

Stuart Redman

100 units of vocabulary reference and practice
self-study and classroom use

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Contents

Introduction 4

Learning

1 Learning and revising with this book
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook
3 Using a dictionary
4 English language words
5 Problems with pronunciation
6 Classroom language

Word formation

7 Prefixes
8 Noun suffixes
9 Adjective suffixes
10 Zero affixation
11 Compound nouns
12 Compound adjectives

Phrase building

13 Collocation (word partners)
14 Verb or adjective + preposition
15 Preposition + noun
16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning
17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style
18 Idioms and fixed expressions
19 Make, do, have, take
20 Give, keep, break, catch, see
21 Get: uses and expressions
22 Go: uses and expressions
23 Apologies, excuses and thanks
24 Requests, invitations and suggestions
25 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing
26 Specific situations and special occasions

Parts of speech (special problems)

27 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns
28 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive
29 Verb patterns
30 Adjectives
31 Prepositions: place
32 Adverbs: frequency and degree

Examples

uncountable noun, prefix, main stress
rough, through, island, necessary
board pen, swap places, rub sth. out
to stay / a stay; a look / to look
alarm clock; credit card; baby-sitter
easy-going, good-looking, well-paid
a strong accent, miss the bus
listen (to), keen (on), good (at)
on holiday, by mistake, on TV
lie down, get over sth., take off
put on, get by, make sth. up
never mind, take a short cut, What's up?
make progress, do homework, have a rest
keep a record, break the law, catch a bus
get a job, get married, get up
go deaf, go for a drink, have a go
sorry I'm late, I got held up, thanks a lot
could you ...? I'd love to, how about ...?
what do you think of ...? personally, according to
hi, good luck, nice to meet you, happy birthday
information (U), trousers (pl)
enjoy, can't stand, refuse
verb + object, verb + 'that' clause
big vs. huge, boring vs. bored
on the table, next to the church
hardly ever, quite, almost
Connecting and linking

33 Time and sequence
34 Addition and contrast
35 Similarities, differences and conditions
36 Reason, purpose and result

when, while, after, first of all, finally
in addition, although, in spite of
similar to, compared with/to, unless
as, so, because (of), as a result

Topics

The world around us
37 The physical world
38 Weather
39 Using the land
40 Animals and insects
41 Countries, nationalities and language

oceans, mountains, deserts, hurricane
showers, cloudy, fog, pour with rain
plants, agriculture, mining, gold
lion, wild, spider, rabbit
Sweden, Swiss, Arabic

People
42 The body and what it does
43 Describing people's appearance
44 Describing character
45 Human feelings and actions
46 Family and friends
47 Ages and stages

bend your knees, bite your nails
tall and blond with broad shoulders
shy, friendly, unpleasant
pride, jealous (of), stare, whisper
niece, relatives, surname, best friend
teenager, grow up, adult, pregnant

Daily life
48 Daily routines
49 Homes and buildings
50 Around the home 1
51 Around the home 2
52 Everyday problems
53 Money
54 Health: illness and disease
55 Health: injuries
56 Clothes
57 Shops and shopping
58 Food
59 Cooking and restaurants
60 Town and country
61 On the road
62 Transport

get up, leave home, go to sleep
flat, on the ground floor, roof
lounge, on the sofa, food mixer
washbasin, tidy, hoover, polish
it's not working, drop, break
coins, borrow, I can't afford it
flu, sore throat, sneezing
twist my ankle, bleeding, bruise
shirt, trousers, take off, get dressed
chemist, shop assistant, I'm being served
carrot, peach, lamb
fry, salty, main course, book a table
suburbs, noisy, fields
turn left, traffic lights, accident
coach, bus stop, platform, get off

Work
63 Work: duties, conditions and pay
64 Jobs
65 The career ladder
66 In the office and in the factory
67 Business and finance
68 Sales and marketing

What do you do?, salary, do overtime
dentist, lawyer, plumber
be promoted, resign, unemployed
show sb. around, assembly line, goods
turnover, make a profit, rise and fall
market share, competitors, image

Leisure and entertainment
69 Hobbies
70 Sport 1: games, people and places
71 Sport 2: winning, losing and scoring
72 Cinema and theatre
73 Music, art and literature

photography, play cards, spare time
tennis court, racket, goal, referee
win, draw, latest score, half-time
audience, actor, a thriller
orchestra, composer, painting, novelist
Introduction

Who is this book for?

*English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate and intermediate)* has been written to help learners at this level to improve their English. It has been designed for students who are studying on their own, but it can also be used by a teacher in the classroom with groups of students.

How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. The left-hand page explains new words and expressions (most units contain approximately 25 new words or phrases), and the right-hand page gives you a chance to check your understanding through a series of exercises which practise the new vocabulary. In a very limited number of units e.g. Units 18 and 71, the right-hand page also includes a few new words and phrases which are not explained on the left-hand page. There is an answer key at the back of the book. This not only gives correct answers to exercises with ‘right’ or ‘wrong’ solutions, but also possible answers and sample answers for exercises which do not have ‘right’ or ‘wrong’ solutions.

There is also an index at the back of the book. This lists all the new words and phrases introduced in the book and refers you to the unit or units where these words appear. The index also includes a phonemic transcription for many of the words, and on page 247 you are given special help with the pronunciation of approximately 200 words which present particular problems for many learners of English.

The left-hand page

This is the page that introduces the new vocabulary for each topic or area of language. First of all, the vocabulary is divided into a number of sections (A, B, C, etc.) with simple clear titles; and then within each section, new words are explained using a number of different techniques:

- A short definition. The definition follows directly after the word, or comes at the end of the phrase or sentence; it is in brackets and introduced by the symbol =. e.g. *unemployed* (= without a job); *feel like* (= want or desire infnl) The abbreviations *fml* or *infml* tell you if a word is either ‘formal’ or ‘informal’.
- A short explanation. This will be a complete sentence which often includes the new word, e.g. *effective*. (If something is *effective*, it works well and produces good results.)
- A synonym or opposite, e.g. *terrific* (= fantastic); *dirty* (= clean)
- In a situation. Some words are difficult to define and it is easier to see their meaning when they are put in context. The following is from a text about a motoring accident. e.g. ‘The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was *badly injured*, and both cars were *badly damaged*.’
- A picture or diagram. This seems the obvious way to explain a large number of concrete nouns and verbs.

  e.g.

  ![Carrot](image)

  go along here and *turn left.*
For many of the new words there are also sentence examples which show the words in context in order to consolidate their meaning and illustrate any special syntactic features.

My boyfriend gets very jealous when I talk to other boys.
The plane appeared in the sky, then suddenly disappeared behind a cloud.
He admitted stealing the woman’s money. (admit + -ing)
We were very busy but we managed to finish by 6 o’clock. (manage + inf.)

Finally, a big effort has been made to introduce new words alongside other words that often appear with them (this is called ‘collocation’).

e.g. miss the bus; a strong accent; the car broke down; it’s vitally important; fasten your seat belt; go on holiday; give someone a hand; to a certain extent, a terrible pain, etc.

**The right-hand page**

This page contains the exercises to practise the new vocabulary presented on the left-hand page. In general the first exercise practises the form of some of the new words, and then there are further exercises which focus on the meaning. In most units there is at least one exercise which gives learners a chance to think about and practise new vocabulary in relation to their own lives, and/or a task which invites learners to do something with the vocabulary outside of the book (e.g. 11.4, 14.4, etc.). And in every unit, there is a range of exercise types to help maintain your interest.

**Using the book**

The first five units (or first six units if you go to an English class) teach you some important vocabulary, but they also help you with with useful ideas and techniques for vocabulary learning. Do these units first, and then work through the book studying the units which interest you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of abbreviations and symbols used in the book</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(U)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmEng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[NOT Host the bus]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Learning and revising with this book

Look at Exercise 1 on the next page before you read this page.

A Establish a routine

A routine means doing certain things regularly in the same way. And if you are using this book for self-study (= to study alone), it helps to have a routine. Decide how much time you can spend on the book each day or each week. If you are studying a unit for the first time, try to give yourself at least (= a minimum of) half an hour or forty-five minutes; if you are revising (= looking through a unit a second or third time), five or ten minutes each time is very useful. So, plan longer periods for new units, and shorter periods for revision.

B Working through the book

Do different things to maintain your interest. (= keep your interest high). For example:

- Don’t work through the units in sequence (= in the order they appear in the book): look through the units and choose ones that interest you.
- When you do a unit, you can:
  - read the whole of the left-hand page, then do the exercises.
  - read part of the left-hand page, then do one or two exercises.
  - try the exercises first, then use the left-hand page when you have a problem.
- Be active when you are learning. For example:
  - While you are reading the left-hand page, use a highlighter pen to mark new or interesting vocabulary.
  - Practise saying the words silently in your head (= without a noise), and also out loud (= making a noise, so it is possible for others to hear), to see if you can pronounce them.
  - Put new words in your own notebook using some of the ideas from Unit 2 to do it effectively. (If something is effective, it works well and produces good results.)

C Revision

It is common to learn a word one day, then find you cannot remember it a day later. If you revise regularly (just for short periods), it helps you to remember words and make them part of your ‘active’ vocabulary. Here are some ideas for revising with this book.

- Do exercises in pencil. Check your answers when you have finished, then rub them out (= remove them using a rubber/eraser). Later, come back and do the exercises again, and just use the left-hand page if you cannot remember something.
- When you read a left-hand page for a second time, have a piece of card with you. When you reach a new word in bold which has a definition/explanation after it in brackets ( ), cover the definition quickly and try to say what it is. Then uncover it to see if you were right.
- Revise for short periods but do it often. Five minutes a day is probably better than half an hour a week; but half an hour a week is probably better than two hours a month.
- As with learning, be active when you revise. Look for different ways to revise: test yourself, create games for yourself; set goals/targets (= decide on things you want to be able to do by a particular time); decide when to work on something, e.g. meaning on Sunday, pronunciation on Monday, etc.


**Exercises**

1.1 Think about these questions. On the opposite page you will find some answers. Do you agree with them?

1 Is it better to plan regular self-study, or is it better just to study when you think you’ve got some free time?
2 Do you think you should work through the units in the same order as they appear in the book?
3 Do you think it’s a good idea to write down new words in a notebook while you are studying a unit?
4 Is it necessary to revise vocabulary?
5 Is it better to revise vocabulary occasionally for long periods of time, or is it better to revise regularly for short periods of time?

1.2 Finding your way round the book.

Turn to the Topic units in the Contents on pages 1–3. Take a blank piece of paper and cover the right-hand side of the page giving the examples. Now read down the list of unit titles. For each one, try to write down your own examples – one or two for each unit. Are there any unit titles you don’t understand? Are there any units where you can’t think of examples? If so, turn to that unit and find out what it is about.

You could use similar titles in your own vocabulary notebook. (See Unit 2)

1.3 *True* or *False?* If the sentence is *false*, rewrite it to make it *true*. Write your answers in pencil.

1 In this book, new words are often shown in *bold* print.
2 Definitions/explanations of new words are often in *brackets* after the word.
3 A *routine* means doing certain things in a different way each time.
4 If you *maintain* something at a level, it *means* you keep it at the same level.
5 If something, e.g. a way of learning, is *effective*, it doesn’t work very well.
6 *At least* 50 people *means* a maximum of 50 people.
7 If you write something then *rub it out*, you remove it from the page.
8 If you do something *silently*, you do it without making a noise.
9 *Revision* means studying something for the first time.
10 If you have a *goal* or *target*, you have something you want to be able to do or achieve by a particular point in the future.

Now check your answers on the opposite page and look at any wrong answers carefully. Then rub out your answers and come back to this exercise again tomorrow or within the next two or three days. Find out how much you can remember.

1.4 Planning your self-study.

Now start making your own plans to use this book. Decide how much time you can spend each week, plan some longer periods to study units for the first time, but also some shorter periods for revision. The first five units will teach you some important vocabulary; give you ideas on keeping a notebook; and give you help with pronunciation. After that, continue with the units that interest you most.

Good luck.
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook

A Organising your notebook
Give each page or double page a title, e.g. sport, education, phrasal verbs, etc. Then, as you learn new words, record each one on a suitable page. You could also have a general index in the back of your book, with a space for each letter. Then, as you learn new words, you enter them alphabetically with the title of the topic in brackets.

B What do I need to record?
These things are important but you won’t need to record all of them for every word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What?</th>
<th>How?</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>a translation</td>
<td>lembraar = to remember (Portuguese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b definition/explanation</td>
<td>A pond is an area of water smaller than a lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c synonym or opposite</td>
<td>awful (= terrible); ugly (≠ beautiful)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d picture</td>
<td>saucepan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e example sentences</td>
<td>My hands were cold so I put on my gloves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>phonetic symbols</td>
<td>ache /ˈeɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or your own system</td>
<td>ache (like ‘make’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part of speech</td>
<td>(n), (v), (adj), etc.</td>
<td>gloves (n); remember (v); careful (adj),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ache (n, v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>make a note +</td>
<td>enjoy + -ing form; I enjoy going to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>example sentence</td>
<td>weather (U); We had lovely weather in Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common partners</td>
<td>phrase or sentence</td>
<td>make a mistake; make a decision; make a mess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special style</td>
<td>make a note</td>
<td>purchase (fml); kids (infml)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: You won’t learn everything about a word when you first record it, so always leave space in your notebook, then you can come back and add more information later.

C Organising words on the page
Certain words often appear together (common partners), so it is a good idea to record them together, and not just write lists of words on their own. You can do this in different ways:

1. Hand
   - thumb
   - wrist
   - don’t pronounce the ‘w’ in wrist or the ‘b’ in thumb

2. Decision
   - take
   - time, e.g. 20 mins
   - a shower
   - a photograph

3. Smile (v, n)
   - e.g. She smiled at me yesterday.
   - He gave me a big smile.
   - She’s got a lovely smile.

4. Rise slowly rise sharply fall slowly fall sharply
   Note both verbs are irregular: rise/rose/risen; fall/fell/fallen


**Exercises**

2.1 Organise this list of words into three groups and give each one a title.

-tie put on fare blouse homeless train get on paysful scarf jumper jacket journey careful station helpful jeans platform thoughtless ticket useless

Find the units in this book which may include these words and add more examples.

2.2 Underline the correct answer or answers.

1 A pond is:
   a) bigger than a lake    b) smaller than a lake    c) the same size

2 I really enjoy:
   a) play tennis    b) to play tennis    c) playing tennis

3 When we were on holiday we had:
   a) lovely weathers    b) lovely weather    c) a lovely weather

4 The underlined letters in ache are pronounced the same as in:
   a) machine    b) catch    c) chemist

5 She gave me a ................ smile.
   a) strong    b) big    c) large

6 The past tense of fall is:
   a) fell    b) felt    c) falled

7 You can put on:
   a) gloves    b) a decision    c) shoes

8 Rise sharply means:

   a)    b)    c)

2.3 Look again at the list a-e in B. Which would be the best way(s) to record the meaning of each word in the list below? What other information would be useful to record with this word (e.g. pronunciation, part of speech, grammar, common partners, etc.)? Use a dictionary to help you.

-dream concentrate beard nearly empty forget rescue knife

2.4 Fill the gaps with common partners for these verbs, then start a page in your own notebook for more examples. Turn to Unit 19 to help you.

-take a picture    make a mistake

.....................    .....................

-do your homework    have a rest

.....................    .....................
3 Using a dictionary

A What dictionaries do I need?

If possible, you should buy two dictionaries: a good bilingual dictionary and a good English-English dictionary. The bilingual dictionary is quicker and easier for you to understand; the English-English dictionary may give you more information about a word or phrase, and it is also a good idea for you to work in English as much as possible. Here are some current recommended English-English dictionaries:

Large dictionaries
Cambridge International Dictionary of English
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
Collins COBUILD English Dictionary
Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary

Medium-sized dictionaries
Collins COBUILD Essential Dictionary
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
Longman Active Study Dictionary

B What information does a dictionary give me?

- the meaning, e.g. homesick = unhappy when you are away from home for a long time
- the pronunciation, e.g. chaos /ˈkeɪəs/, dreadful /ˈdredfol/, island /ˈaɪlənd/
- the part of speech, e.g. dirty adj (= adjective), lose v (= verb), law n (= noun)
- any special grammatical features, e.g. advice (U) (= uncountable)
- common collocations (word partners), e.g. you do homework [NOT you make homework]
- example phrases or sentences, e.g. It was such a big menu, I didn’t know what to choose.
- opposites (where they exist), e.g. polite (= impolite/rude)

Note: In most English-English dictionaries for foreign learners, collocations are usually shown in bold or italics, or they are included in the examples given after the definition.

collocations
definition

pronunciation part of speech grammatical feature examples

C How should I use my dictionary?

Here are some ideas to help you.

- When you look up a word, put a ✓ next to it. Each time you return to a page with a ✓ look at it quickly to check that you remember the word.
- If you see an English word in a text, first try to guess the meaning, and carry on reading to see if your guess seems correct. Use your dictionary to check the meaning.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get several different words in your own language, look up the word in your monolingual dictionary. This should help you to decide which word in your own language is the nearest translation in this context.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning, and the first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. Read through the different meanings.
Exercises

If you find these exercises difficult, it may mean that you need to practise using a dictionary more often, or you need to buy yourself a better dictionary.

3.1 Use a dictionary to find/check the answers to these questions. (They are all based on words from the opposite page.)

1. What does dreadful mean?
2. How do you pronounce lose? (Is it the same as ‘choose’ or ‘chose’?)
3. What part of speech is choose?
4. What part of speech is homesick?
5. Homework and chaos are both nouns, but what type of noun are they?
6. What adjectives are often used before chaos? (Give two.)
7. What two prepositions are often used after choose?
8. Write down a sentence example of choose used with a preposition.

3.2 When you look up a word, you can also use your dictionary to increase your vocabulary by learning related words and phrases. Find out if your dictionary helps you to answer these questions, also about words from the opposite page.

1. Choose is a verb, but what is the noun with the same meaning?
2. Advice is a noun, but what is the verb with the same meaning?
3. Advice is also uncountable, but you can make it countable using another word. Can you complete this sentence: ‘He gave me a very useful ............. of advice.’
4. What adjective is formed from chaos?
5. What is the opposite of dirty?
6. What is the difference between homework and housework?
7. What is the opposite of lose a game?
8. What is the opposite of lose weight?
9. Law often appears in the phrase law and ............... What is the missing word?
10. If you want to sit at a table in a cafe and you see that one person is sitting there already, but another seat is empty, what can you say to the person sitting down?

3.3 In the word ‘island’ /aɪland/ , the letter ‘s’ is silent (= not pronounced). Use the pronunciation guide in your dictionary to find the silent letters in each of these words. (Do not include the letter ‘e’ at the end of a word.)

knife bomb psychology receipt castle doubt wrist calm

Note: Students often ask if the letter ‘t’ is pronounced in ‘often’. Some people pronounce it, others don’t. What does your dictionary say?

3.4 Look at the entry for suit on the right, then match the definitions with the sentences on the left.

1. I’m afraid black doesn’t suit me – my hair is the wrong colour.
2. A: I’m not going, so don’t ask me again.
   B: OK. Suit yourself.
3. If we have the meeting this afternoon, would 2.30 suit you?
# English language words

## Parts of speech

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>e.g. chair, information, happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>e.g. choose, tell, complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>e.g. happy, tall, dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>e.g. slowly, carefully, often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>e.g. in, at, on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>e.g. me, you, him, we, it, she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>e.g. definite article (the); indefinite article (a/an)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Special terms

**Uncountable noun:** (U) a noun which has no plural form and cannot be used with the indefinite article, e.g. information. See Unit 27.

**Plural noun:** (pl) a noun which only has a plural form and cannot be used with the indefinite article, e.g. trousers. See Unit 27.

**Infinitive:** the base form of a verb, e.g. (to) work, (to) stop, (to) be.

**Phrasal verb:** a verb + adverb and/or preposition, e.g. turn on (verb + adverb), look after (verb + preposition), give up (verb + adverb), put up with (verb + adverb + preposition). See Units 16 and 17.

**Idiom:** a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, e.g. never mind, hang on, a short cut, keep an eye on something.

**Transitive verb:** a verb which needs a **direct object**, e.g. Police caught the man (‘the man’ is the direct object of the verb ‘caught’). See Unit 17.

**Intransitive verb:** a verb which does not need a direct object, e.g. The books arrived on time. (There is no direct object after arrive.) See Unit 17.

## Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a prefix, *comfort* is a root, and -able is a suffix. Other common prefixes include: re-, in-, and dis--; common suffixes include: -ity, -ment, and -ive. Many words also have **synonyms**, which are words with the same meaning. For example, ‘big’ is a synonym of ‘large’. The opposite is ‘small’.

## Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonetic symbols**, e.g. book /bk/, before /brfz/, cinema /sinoma/, and so on.

Each word contains one or more syllables: ‘book’ has one syllable; ‘before’ has two syllables (beefore); ‘cinema’ has three syllables (ci-ne-ma); ‘education’ has four syllables (e-du-ca-tion); and so on.

For pronunciation, it is important to know which syllable has the main stress. On ‘before’ it is the second syllable (bef ore); on ‘cinema’ it is the first (cinema); and on ‘education’ it is the third (education).

**Note:** Dictionaries mark stress in different ways: in bold (return); or a ’ before the main syllable (re’turn). Make sure you understand how your dictionary shows it.

## Punctuation

- full stop .
- comma ,
- brackets ()
- hyphen -
- question mark ?
Exercises

4.1 There is one word missing in each line of this text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? And what type of word is it (noun, verb, etc.)? Look at the example first.

Last year I went to Spain for my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I took a train to Barcelona where spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn’t mind spending a lot money because it is a wonderful and also very convenient. My brother was the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else.

4.2 In the dialogue below, can you find at least one example of the following: an uncountable noun; a plural noun; a phrasal verb; an idiom?

A: What’s the time?
B: 8 o’clock, so we’d better get a move on if we’re going to meet your sister at the airport.
A: That’s alright. Her flight doesn’t arrive until 8.30.
B: Yeah, but it’ll take us an hour to get there – you know what the traffic is like.
A: OK. I’ll just go and get changed.
B: What’s wrong with those shorts?
A: I don’t like driving in shorts. I’m going to put some jeans on.

4.3 Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Which are transitive, which are intransitive?

1 She broke her leg.
2 I got up at seven thirty.
3 We arrived late.
4 Take off your jacket.
5 She doesn’t like Chinese food.
6 He told me to sit down.

4.4 How many syllables are there in each of the words in the box?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>informal</th>
<th>education</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>preposition</td>
<td>comfortable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now mark the main stress on each of the above words.

4.5 Look at these words, then answer the questions below.

happy correct lucky sure possible

1 What part of speech are these words?
2 Change each one into an adverb.
3 Can you write down a synonym for at least three of the words?
4 Which prefix do you need to form the opposite of each word? (three different ones)
5 Which word has the main stress on the second syllable?
Problems with pronunciation

A Phonetics
With many languages you can look at a word and know (more or less) how to pronounce it. With English this is not true: it is often very difficult to know the pronunciation from looking at a word. For example:
cough (pronounced like ‘off’) enough (like ‘stuff’) through (like ‘too’) and dough (like ‘so’)
The only way you can be sure about the pronunciation is to learn some phonetic symbols which tell you the pronunciation. Dictionaries use them, and there is a table of phonetic symbols, with examples, on page 246. Phonetic symbols are used next to many words in the index, and there is a special list of words on page 247, which cause pronunciation problems for speakers from different countries.

B Word stress
When a word has two or more syllables, one of them has the main stress. In these examples, the main stress follows the symbol ‘:
‘accent pre’fer edu’cation ‘necessary Ja’pan Japa’nese
If you put the stress on the wrong syllable, it may be difficult for listeners to understand what you are saying.

C /æ/
Probably the most important sound in English because it is often the pronunciation of the letters ‘a’, ‘o’ and ‘e’ if they are not part of a stressed syllable.
ma’chine /ma’fi:n/ ‘mother /’mAda/ po’tato /po’tetəʊ/ ‘cinema /’sinəma/

D Key letters and sounds
A common problem is that a single letter or combination of letters has more than one pronunciation, e.g. -ough in section A. Here are some more examples:
the letter ‘o’ is often /u/, e.g. hot; or /ʌ/, e.g. some; or /əʊ/, e.g. no
the letter ‘a’ is often /æ/, e.g. hat; or /eɪ/, e.g. same; or /ə/, e.g. fast
the letter ‘u’ is often /ʌ/, e.g. run; or /u/, e.g. put
the letter ‘i’ is often /ɪ/, e.g. sit; or /aɪ/, e.g. side

E Silent letters and short syllables
There are many words in English where a letter is not pronounced:
fasten plumbør calm knee wrong comb
There are also many words where we almost ‘eat’ one of the syllables, and as a result a vowel sound almost disappears and a word, for example, with three written syllables may be two (or two and a half) in spoken English. For example:
interested /ɪntrəstɪd/ fattening /fætənɪŋ/ vegetable /vedʒtəbəl/
Note: The exercises on the next page practise some words with difficult pronunciation.
Exercises

5.1 Try using some phonetic symbols. Using your dictionary or the index, fill in the pronunciation of these words (put the symbols between the / /). Then practise saying the words and make sure you can see and hear the difference in the pronunciation of the words in each pair.

1 row / / cow / / 2 back / / bacon / /

3 soup / / soap / / 4 vase / / razor / /

5.2 Look at the underlined letters in these words. Which one is the odd one out in each case?

1 bread dream spread dead
2 spoon room flood choose
3 fast phrase blame sunbathe
4 cousin wound (n) rough trouble
5 virus pilot diet since
6 hyphen symptom type psychology

5.3 Which syllable has the main stress in these words? Put them in the correct column.

cathedral policy palace
opposite police understand
advertisement desert (n)
competition organise
assistance education

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>first</th>
<th>second</th>
<th>third</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now look at the words again. How many examples of the /a/ sound can you find?

5.4 Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different?

know / knife
island / Islam
listen / western
aisle / Christmas
hand / handsome

muscle / scissors
climb / bomb
honest / hope
wrong / wrist
calf / calm
Classroom language

A Equipment

These are some of the things you may use in your classroom or school.

Note: We can use some of these nouns as verbs with little or no change: to video (= to record a programme on video), to photocopy (= to use the photocopier), to highlight and to file (= to put things in a file)

B Classroom activities

Here are some classroom activities. Look carefully at the verbs in bold.

Things you do in the classroom:

Look up a word if you don't understand it. (= find the meaning of a word in a dictionary)
Borrow someone's dictionary or rubber. (= use it and then return it)
Rub out mistakes in your notebook. (= erase mistakes / remove them using a rubber)

Things the teacher may do in the classroom:

Plug in the tape recorder. (= put the plug in the socket and turn on the electricity)
Turn up the tape recorder (= increase the volume) if the students can't hear it.
Rub things off the board. (= remove writing from the board)
Correct students' English. (= give the correct English if students make mistakes)

Things your teacher may ask you to do in the classroom:

Could you clean the board, Carlos? (= remove all the writing from the board)
Write these words down. (= write these words on a piece of paper / in a notebook)
Enrique, could you swap places (= exchange places) with Lorena?
Repeat this sentence (= say it again) after me.

C Questions about vocabulary

What does X mean? [NOT what means X?]
How do you pronounce it?
How do you spell 'bicycle'?
How do you use 'anyway' in a sentence?
What's the difference between X and Y?
Exercises

6.1 Label these pictures then check your answers on the opposite page.

6.2 Answer these questions.
1. What do you rub off the board?
2. What do you put in a tape recorder?
3. What do you put on an OHP?
4. What do you keep in a file?
5. What do you put in a briefcase?
6. What do you put in a socket?
7. What do you use a dictionary for?
8. What do you use a rubber for?
9. What do you use a photocopier for?
10. Why do you turn up a tape recorder?

6.3 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right.
1. clean
2. turn up
3. borrow
4. swap
5. video
6. do
7. correct
8. look up
9. plug in
   places
   a word
   mistakes
   the board
   a dictionary
   the OHP
   the tape recorder
   a programme
   an exercise

6.4 Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things?
clean the board
use a rubber
borrow something
watch a video
swap places with someone
look up a word
make a mistake
write something down in a notebook

6.5 Here are some answers. What are the possible questions?
A: .................................................?
B: It means to exchange places.
A: .................................................?
B: /swɒp/ Like 'cop' or 'stop'.
A: .................................................?
B: S-W-A-P.
A: .................................................?
B: I can't see the board from here. Will you swap places with me?
Prefixes

With the meaning ‘not’

Prefixes (un-, in-, il-, ir-, and dis-) are often used to give adjectives (and some verbs and nouns) a negative meaning. Here are common examples:

- happy vs. unhappy
- possible vs. impossible
- correct vs. incorrect

un- is used with many different words, e.g. unfriendly, unable, unemployed (= without a job), untidy (= not in order; in a mess)

im- is used before some words beginning with m or p, e.g. impolite (= rude), impatient

(somebody who is impatient wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things)

il- is used before some words beginning with l, e.g. illegible (= cannot be read because the writing is very bad)

ir- is only used before some words beginning with r, e.g. irresponsible

dis- is used before some adjectives, e.g. dishonest, and a few verbs, e.g. dislike, disagree

in- is used before a limited number of words, e.g. invisible (= cannot be seen)

Note: A prefix does not normally change word stress, e.g. happy/unhappy; possible/impossible. But the stress may change if you want to emphasise the negative or opposite:

A: Was he happy about the change?
B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

Verb prefixes: un- and dis-

These prefixes have two meanings: they can have a negative meaning (as above), but they can also mean ‘the opposite of an action’ or ‘to reverse an action’. This meaning is used with certain verbs.

I locked the door when I left, but I lost the key, so I couldn’t it unlock it when I got back.
I had to pack my suitcase (= put everything in it) very quickly, so when I unpacked (= took everything out) at the hotel, most of my clothes looked terrible.
The plane appeared in the sky, then suddenly disappeared behind a cloud.
In the morning you get dressed (= put on your clothes); when you go to bed you get undressed (= take off your clothes).

Other verb prefixes with specific meanings

re- (= again)  My homework was terrible, so I had to redo it.
The shop closed down but will reopen next month.
I failed my exam but I can retake (or redo/resit) it next year.

over- (= too much)  I think my boss is overdoing it at the moment. (= working too hard; also overwork)
I went to bed very late and I overslept (= slept too long) this morning.
The shop assistant overcharged me. (= asked me for too much money)

mis- (= badly or incorrectly)  I’m afraid I misunderstood what he said.
Two of the students misread the first question.
Exercises

7.1 Which prefix forms the opposite of these words? (The bottom line are all verbs, the rest are adjectives.)

...happy ...patient ...polite ...legal
...correct ...regular ...visible ...possible
...legal ...friendly ...employed ...honest
...pack ...lock ...agree ...like

7.2 Agree with these statements, using words from the left-hand page which have the same meaning as the underlined words.

Example: A: He doesn't have a job, does he?
B: No, ...he's unemployed.

1 It's against the law, isn't it?
   Oh yes,

2 His room is always in a mess, isn't it?
   Yes,

3 He took off his clothes!
   Yes,

4 This handwriting is impossible to read.
   Yes I know,

5 She can never wait for five minutes, can she?
   No,

6 I thought it was rude, didn’t you?
   Yes, it was very

7.3 Complete the verbs in these sentences.

1 I'm sorry, I mis................. her message completely.
2 We un................. as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
3 She was here a minute ago, but then she dis................. I'm afraid I don't know where she is now.
4 We normally have similar opinions but I dis................. with him totally on the subject of drugs.
5 My homework was so bad that I'll have to re................. it.
6 Apparently her alarm clock didn't ring and she over.................
7 She finally managed to un................. the door and we were able to go inside.
8 I dis................. the film, but the others enjoyed it.
9 I don't think I'll pass the exam, but I can always re................. it in September.
10 The post office shuts for lunch but it should re................. at 2.00 p.m.
11 She's over................. at the moment. She really needs a holiday and a complete break from her job.
12 My sister wrapped up my present so well that it took me about five minutes to un................. it.

7.4 Keep several pages in your notebook for verbs or adjectives which combine with these prefixes. Each time you add a new word, read through your list of words with that prefix, then close your book and see how many you can remember.
Noun suffixes

A Verb + suffix

Many nouns are formed in this way.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>improve (= get better)</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage (e.g. a shop or business)</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elect (= choose somebody by voting)</td>
<td>-ion</td>
<td>election</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss (= talk about something seriously)</td>
<td>-ion</td>
<td>discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform (= tell someone something)</td>
<td>-ation</td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organise</td>
<td>-ation</td>
<td>organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jog (= running to keep fit or for pleasure)</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>jogging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell (e.g. S-P-E-L-L)</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>spelling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Sometimes there is a spelling change. The most common is the omission of the final ‘e’ before the suffix -ion or -ation: translate/translation; organise/organisation

B Adjective + suffix

Nouns are also formed by adding a suffix to an adjective. Two suffixes often added to adjectives to form nouns are -ness and -ity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weak (≠ strong)</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>weakness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark (e.g. at night, when you can’t see)</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>darkness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stupid (≠ intelligent, clever)</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>stupidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punctual (= always arrives at the right time)</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>punctuality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similar (= almost the same; ≠ different)</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>similarity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Pronunciation

The addition of these suffixes may change the pronunciation.

Nouns ending -ion or -ity have the main stress on the syllable before, so the pronunciation may be different from the verb or adjective:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td>education</td>
<td>similar</td>
<td>similarity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translate</td>
<td>translation</td>
<td>stupid</td>
<td>stupidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>discussion</td>
<td>punctual</td>
<td>punctuality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D -er/or and -ist

These are common noun suffixes added to existing nouns or verbs, and they describe people and their jobs.

-er                      -er                      -or                      -ist
  dancer                  driver                   actor                    artist
  singer                  manager                  director                 economist
  murderer                footballer              translator              psychologist
  farmer                  employer                 operator                 journalist

Note: Notice the common spelling changes: translate/translator, operate/operator, economy/economist, psychology/psychologist.
**Exercises**

8.1 Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td></td>
<td>stupid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td></td>
<td>dark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jog</td>
<td></td>
<td>weak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern</td>
<td></td>
<td>similar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td></td>
<td>punctual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hesitate</td>
<td></td>
<td>sad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td></td>
<td>popular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2 Combine the suffixes on the right with the verbs or adjectives on the left, and then complete the text below. (Remember you may need to make a small spelling change.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>improve</th>
<th>televise</th>
<th>elect</th>
<th>educate</th>
<th>weak</th>
<th>manage</th>
<th>govern</th>
<th>stupid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

In his first broadcast on (1) ________ since he won the (2) ________ last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and (3) ________ two of his top priorities. And in a strong attack on the previous (4) ________, he said that the present (5) ________ of the British economy was caused entirely by their (6) ________ and bad (7) ________. He said he would act immediately and he hoped the British people would be able to see clear signs of an (8) ________ in the economy by the end of the year.

8.3 Write down the name of the person who does these things.

*Example: farm farmer*

1 act .................. 4 sing .................. 7 economics .................
2 employ ................ 5 murder ................ 8 translate ................
3 football ............... 6 psychology ............ 9 manage .................

8.4 Look at the two examples and then complete the rest of the definitions.

*Example: An actor is a person who ... acts in films, plays and on TV....
A murderer is a person who ... murders someone.*

1 A journalist is a person who ..................................................
2 A ballet dancer is a person who .............................................
3 A film director is a person who ..........................................
4 A bank manager is a person who .................................
5 An employer is a person who ........................................
6 A pop singer is a person who ........................................
7 A translator is a person who ...........................................
8 A lorry driver is a person who ...........................................
9 A photographer is a person who ...........................................
10 An artist is a person who ..................................................
9 Adjective suffixes

Suffixes change word class, e.g. from verb to noun or noun to adjective, but they can also change meaning (see sections B and C below).

A Noun or verb + suffix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun or Verb</th>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>danger, fame</td>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>dangerous, famous (= well-known)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, politics</td>
<td>-al</td>
<td>musical, political, industrial, economical (= saves you money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry, economics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud, fog, sun, dirt</td>
<td>-y</td>
<td>cloudy, foggy, sunny, dirty (= clean)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attract, create</td>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>attractive (= pretty, nice to look at); creative (= able to produce new ideas; with imagination)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Sometimes there is a spelling change. Here are common examples:
double the consonant, e.g. sun/sunny, fog/foggy
leave out the final ‘e’, e.g. create/creative, fame/famous
leave out the final ‘s’ before ‘al’, e.g. politics/political; economics/economical
change ‘y’ to ‘i’ before ‘al’, e.g. industry/industrial

B -able /æbl/

This suffix (also -ible in some words) is used to form many adjectives from nouns or verbs: enjoyable, comfortable, knowledgeable (= knows a lot), suitable (= right/correct for a particular situation).
Quite often, -able (and -ible) has the meaning ‘can be done’. For example, something that is washable ‘can be washed’. Other examples include:
drinkable, comprehensible (= can be comprehended or understood), reliable (= can be relied on or trusted, e.g. a car or other machine that never goes wrong or breaks down).
Words ending -able quite often express the opposite meaning by adding the prefix un-:
undrinkable, unreliable, unbreakable (= cannot be broken), unsuitable, uncomfortable
Words ending -ible add the prefix in-:
incomprehensible, inflexible (somebody who is inflexible has a fixed idea about something and cannot change quickly or easily; an inflexible timetable cannot be changed easily); inedible (= cannot be eaten).

C -ful and -less

The suffix -ful often means ‘full of’ + the meaning of the adjective: careful, you are full of care; if you are helpful you are full of help. Other examples are: painful (= hurts a lot), useful, and thoughtful (= someone who is thoughtful is kind and always thinks about others; a thoughtful action shows care for others)
The suffix -less means ‘without’ + the meaning of the adjective: if you are careless, you do something ‘without care’. Other examples are: painless, useless (= has no use or function) thoughtless, jobless and homeless (= with nowhere to live)

Note: You can see that -ful and -less are often used with the same words to form opposites. This is not always true: a person with a home is NOT homeful.
Exercises

9.1 Write down an adjective (or adjectives) formed from these nouns or verbs. Cover the opposite page first.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>thought</th>
<th>dirt</th>
<th>pain</th>
<th>comfort</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attract</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create</td>
<td>danger</td>
<td>suit</td>
<td>rely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog</td>
<td>politics</td>
<td>sun</td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>music</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2 Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives from the opposite page.

1. You must be very ................. when you drive in wet weather.
2. It was so ................. this morning that I couldn’t see more than twenty metres in front of me.
3. Everyone in my country has heard of her; she’s very ................. .
4. The people in the tourist information office were very ................. and answered all our questions without any problems.
5. This is a very ................. road; there were at least three serious accidents on it last year.
6. It was very ................. when I hit my leg against the corner of the table.
7. This bag is very ................. because I can use it for work or when I go on holiday.
8. We’ve never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it’s been very ................. .
9. The factory is in the middle of the ................. part of the city, surrounded by other factories.
10. I made some coffee but it was horrible. In fact, my sister said it was ................. .
11. I’m afraid my working hours are very ................. ; I have to start at exactly the same time every day and finish at the same time every day.
12. It seems terrible to me that there are so many ................. people living in a city with thousands of empty houses.

9.3 How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix -less?

- painful
- wonderful
- useful
- careful
- beautiful
- tactful
- awful
- thoughtful

Can you think of words which mean the opposite of the other words (the ones without -less)?

9.4 From the adjectives on this page and the opposite page, choose three which could describe each of these people or things. (You can use the same adjective more than once.)

1. the weather ........................................
2. someone who is a very bad driver ........................................
3. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart ........................................
4. a large city ........................................
5. Albert Einstein ........................................
6. a new car ........................................
7. a speech ........................................
8. yourself ........................................
Zero affixation

What is zero affixation?

Many words in English can function as a noun and verb, or noun and adjective, or verb and adjective, with no change in form. The meaning is not always the same, but this unit looks at examples where the words do have the same meaning.

What's the answer? (noun)  I must clean my room. (verb)
Answer the question. (verb)  It's a clean room. (adjective)
I don't like the cold. (noun)  I didn't reply to the letter. (verb)
I don't like cold weather. (adjective)  I wrote a reply to the letter. (noun)

Note: Other examples in the book are marked like this: ache (n, v), damage (n, v), dry (v, adj). Keep a record of them in your notebook.

Noun and verb

You may know these words in one form but not the other. (The definitions are for the verb.)

brake (= stop a car using the brake on the floor)
diet (= eat less and lose weight)
guess (= give an answer without knowing the facts)
ring (= phone)
push (= pull)
murder (= kill someone)

Note: Other words in this group include: stay, drink, rest, look, cost, and wait. Use a dictionary if you need to check the meaning. Here are a few examples:

We queued for half an hour.
This orange smells/tastes strange.
I didn't know the answer, so I guessed.

We waited in a queue for half an hour.
This orange has got a strange smell/taste.
I didn't know the answer, so I had a guess.

Which verb?

When you use these words as nouns, you need to choose the correct verb to use with it.

Verb
We stayed in Paris for a short time.
We rested for a while.
She braked quickly.
He needs to diet.
I'm going to ring him.
I looked in the paper.
He pushed me.
I dreamt about you last night.

Noun
We had a short stay in Paris.
We had a short rest.
She put on the brakes quickly.
He needs to go on a diet.
I'm going to give him a ring.
I had a look in the paper.
He gave me a push.
I had a dream about you last night.
Exercises

10.1 Rewrite these sentences using the underlined nouns as verbs. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.

Example: There was a lot of rain yesterday.
...It rained a lot yesterday...

1 We had a long wait.

2 I had a dream about you last night.

3 We waited in the queue for half an hour.

4 The cost of the holiday was about £500.

5 I wrote a reply to his letter yesterday.

10.2 Now rewrite these sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. The meaning must stay the same.

1 I'll ring him this evening.

2 I diet if I put on weight.

3 It was very hot, so we rested for a while after lunch.

4 I braked but I still couldn't stop in time.

5 He pushed me.

6 Did you look in the paper?

10.3 Sometimes the same word form can be a verb and noun but with a very different meaning. Read these pairs of sentences. Does the verb have the same meaning as the noun, a similar meaning, or a completely different meaning?

1 We had a long wait for the bus.
   If we wait any longer, we may miss the train.

2 Could we have another bottle of water, please?
   I asked her to water the garden.

3 I gave him the book.
   Did you book the table in the restaurant?

4 They always take a break after an hour's work.
   Did he break his arm skiing?

5 I go for a run most mornings.
   I was late so I had to run to get to school on time.
**Compound nouns**

**Formation**

A compound noun is formed from two nouns, or an adjective and a noun. Here are some common examples.

- alarm clock
- credit card
- table tennis
- T-shirt
- earring
- sunglasses
- traffic lights
- tin opener
- parking meter
- *first aid
- *pedestrian crossing
- dining room (= the room where you eat meals)
- film star (e.g. Tom Cruise, Jodie Foster)
- brother-in-law (= your sister's husband, your husband's brother)
- income tax (= the tax you pay on your salary)
- writing paper (= paper for writing letters)
- washing machine (= the machine for washing clothes)
- cheque book (= a book which has cheques)
- baby-sitter (= he/she looks after children when parents are out)
- *mother tongue (= your first language)
- *science fiction (= stories about the future)
- *box office (= where you buy tickets in cinemas and theatres)

**One word or two?**

Compound nouns are usually written as two words (e.g. credit card), but sometimes they are joined by a hyphen (e.g. baby-sitter), or written as one word (e.g. sunglasses). Unfortunately there is no rule for this, so you may need to check in a dictionary.

**Pronunciation**

The main stress is usually on the first part (e.g. parking meter) but sometimes it is on both parts (e.g. mother tongue). In A, the compounds marked *all have the stress on both parts. Some dictionaries show the stress on compounds.

**Forming new compounds**

Quite often, one part of a compound forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

- post/ticket/box office
- traffic lights/warden/jam
- film/pop/rock star
- brother/sister/father/mother -in-law
- dining/sitting/waiting room

Note: A traffic jam is a long line of cars which are moving slowly because the road is busy; and traffic wardens patrol the streets to make sure you are not parked in the wrong place illegally. You buy theatre tickets at the box office and train tickets at the ticket office.
Exercises

11.1 Find compound nouns on the opposite page connected with each of these topics.

11.2 Complete these sentences with suitable compound nouns, then see if you can find them on the opposite page.

1. I'm late because there was a terrible ...................... in the centre of town.
2. Humphrey Bogart was a famous ...................... in the forties and fifties.
3. My ...................... didn’t ring this morning and I didn’t wake up until 9.30.
4. When I got to the surgery, I had to sit in the ...................... for forty minutes before I could see the dentist.
5. Mary really wanted to see the film but she couldn’t find a ...................... for the children, so she had to stay at home.
6. When I’m driving I always wear ...................... if it’s very bright and sunny.
7. You have to pay ...................... on your salary in Britain; the amount depends on how much you earn.
8. I often have the same problem: I park the car next to a ......................, and then I discover that I don’t have the right money.
9. In some countries you have to have a ...................... box in your car for minor injuries and illnesses.
10. My brother loves ......................, but I prefer true stories about the present or the past.

11.3 Take one word (the first part or the second part) from each compound and create a new compound. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

Examples: brother-in-law   mother-in-law
           table tennis     table leg

           dining room     traffic lights
           film star      sunglasses
           credit card    post office
           toothpaste     hairdryer

Now mark the main stress on each of the compound nouns you have created.

11.4 Try creating your own compound nouns. Choose two or three common words and then try to form compound nouns from them. When you have two or three possibilities, check in a dictionary to see if your words exist. Start with these.

........ book or book ........
........ card
Compound adjectives

Formation and pronunciation
A compound adjective is formed from two different words, and occasionally three. They are usually written with a hyphen (e.g. good-looking, well-known), and the stress is usually the same on both parts of the compound.

Describing people
Many compound adjectives describe a person’s appearance, character, and situation.

This is William. He isn’t well-known (= famous), he isn’t well-off (= rich), and I’ve never heard anyone say he was good-looking (= handsome/attractive). But he’s a very nice man – kind, friendly and very easy-going (= relaxed). In this picture he’s wearing a short-sleeved shirt and a brand-new (= completely new) hat.

‘Well’ and ‘badly’
These adverbs combine with many past participles to form compound adjectives. You can use ‘well’ or ‘badly’ in front of the adjective (except well-known, which has no opposite).

- a well-directed film
- a badly-paid job (= a low salary)
- a well-made pair of shoes
- a badly-behaved child (= acting in a bad way)
- a well-written story
- a badly-dressed young man (= wearing horrible clothes)

A ‘five-minute’ walk
It is common to combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective.

- It’s a fifteen-minute drive to the centre. (= a drive of fifteen minutes)
- He works in a four-star hotel. (= a hotel with a rating of four stars)
- I gave her a five-pound note. (= a note with a value of five pounds)
- The winner was a ten-year-old girl. (= a girl who is ten years old)
- There was a two-hour delay on our flight. (= the plane was two hours’ late)

Common compounds
She had a full-time job in a bank, but after the baby was born she changed to a part-time job and just worked in the mornings.

- The hotel is north-west of here, about ten miles away. (also north-east, south-east, and south-west)

Most of the population are right-handed, but about 10% are left-handed.

On trains and planes you can buy a first-class ticket if you are happy to pay a lot more.

- Mary bought a second-hand BMW. (= the car was not brand-new, but was a new car for her)

Note: As with compound nouns, you can often combine different words with one part and form many different compound adjectives.
Exercises

12.1 Match words from the box on the left with words from the box on the right to form 12 compound adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>well</th>
<th>new</th>
<th>known</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>north</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>looking</td>
<td>sleeved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brand</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>hand</td>
<td>handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>pound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2 For each word below, find two words which will combine with it to form different compound adjectives. Cover the left-hand page first.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>well</th>
<th>badly</th>
<th>handed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>time</td>
<td>east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.3 Complete the compound adjectives in these sentences.

1. They were both wearing short-................. shirts.
2. We stayed in a five-................. hotel.
3. There is a shop in London which sells things for left-................. people.
4. He's just bought a brand-................. car.
5. The airport is about ten miles south-................. of the city centre.
6. One little girl was very badly-.................; she kept shouting during lunch and then threw food all over the floor.
7. She's just got a .................-time job; she works three hours a day on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.
8. It was a very badly-................. article: I noticed several punctuation mistakes and lots of spelling mistakes.
9. They're very well-................., so they can afford to go to expensive restaurants.
10. It's a twenty-................. walk to the house, but it takes much less than that in the car.
11. She's got a little stall in the market where she sells second-................. things.
12. When I saw her last night, she was dancing with a very good-................. young man in a white suit.
13. I was astonished when the man at the next table gave the waiter a ten-................. note as a tip.
14. Have you ever met a well-................. actor or politician?
15. I had a nice time with my cousin – he's good company and very easy-.................

12.4 Write ten sentences about yourself and use a different compound adjective from the opposite page in each one. You can describe yourself, your personality, your family, your clothes, the place where you live, the journeys you make, etc. Try to do this exercise with a friend and see who can finish first.
13 Collocation (word partners)

A What is collocation?

If you want to use a word naturally, you need to learn the other words that often go with it (word partners). These can be very different from language to language. For example, in English we say:

I missed the bus (= I didn’t catch the bus) [NOT I lost the bus]
She made a mistake [NOT she did a mistake]
A heavy smoker (= someone who smokes a lot) [NOT a strong smoker or a big smoker]
It was a serious illness [NOT a big illness or a strong illness]

B Verb + noun

The meaning of many of these examples may be clear, but did you know these verbs and nouns go together? Is it the same or different in your language?

start the car (= turn on the engine) start a family (= think about having your first child)
tell a story tell the truth (≠ tell a lie)
tell a joke run a shop/company (= manage/control it)
get on a bus (= get off) get in(to) a car (= get out of a car)
miss a person (= be unhappy because that person is not there)
miss a lesson (= when you don’t come to a lesson)

C Adjective + noun

Common adjectives often combine with a wide range of nouns.

a soft drink (= non-alcoholic drink) a soft voice (≠ a loud voice)
dry wine (≠ sweet wine) dry weather (≠ wet weather)
strong coffee (≠ weak coffee) a strong accent (≠ a slight accent)
hard work (≠ hard physically or mentally) a great success (≠ very successful)
heavy traffic (≠ a lot of cars) heavy rain (≠ raining a lot)

Look at some of these phrases in example sentences.

I can’t understand his English because he has such a strong accent.
It was hard work organising the conference, but I think it was a great success.
You always get heavy traffic during the rush hour.

D Adverb + adjective

In these examples, all the adverbs mean very, but we choose to use them with certain adjectives. (You could still use very in all of these examples if you wish.)

I was terribly sorry to hear about your accident.
He’s highly unlikely to come now. (= I’m almost sure he will not come)
She is fully aware of the problem. (= she knows all about the problem)
It is vitally important that you make a note of common collocations in your notebook.

E Collocation in dictionaries

All good dictionaries now include examples of common collocations but they do it in different ways: sometimes they are in bold print after the definition; sometimes in italics after the definition; and sometimes in the definition and examples. (See Unit 3, Section B.)
Exercises

13.1 You can keep a record of common collocations by using ‘spidergrams’. These are very clear on the page and you can add to them. Complete these.

![Spidergram]

13.2 Write the opposite of these phrases and expressions.

1 sweet wine
2 a strong accent
3 strong coffee
4 a soft voice
5 get on the bus
6 tell the truth
7 catch the bus
8 get in the car

13.3 Find a suitable adjective, verb or adverb from the opposite page to complete these sentences.

1 I’m ............... sorry I’m late, but I ............... the bus and had to wait ages for another one.
2 He ............... everyone the same joke, and nobody laughed.
3 We had lots of snow in the night and I had a problem ............... the car this morning.
4 Michael is the owner, but his brother John ............... the company, and he has about 50 employees working for him.
5 I think they want to get married and ............... a family.
6 That’s the third mistake she’s ............... today.
7 It’s ............... important that we finish this work by the end of the week.
8 If this ............... rain continues, I think he’s ............... unlikely to come.
9 I don’t drink ............... coffee at night because it keeps me awake.
10 I really ............... my family when I stayed in Australia on my own last year.

13.4 The adjectives on the left can all mean ‘very big’, but we often use them specifically with the nouns on the right. Use a good dictionary to find the correct collocations, and then complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wide</th>
<th>large</th>
<th>shoulders</th>
<th>range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>broad</td>
<td>vast</td>
<td>majority</td>
<td>size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I used to be medium but I need a ............... now because I’ve put on weight.
2 Fortunately the shop I go to has a ............... of shirts and jumpers to choose from.
3 I’ve also got very ............... , but my waist is quite small.
4 A few men can’t find clothes to fit them, but the ............... are small, medium or large.
Verb (+ preposition)

Here are some common examples of verbs which are usually followed by a particular preposition. You will probably know most of these verbs, but do you always get the preposition right? Pay special attention to any that are different in your language.

I often listen to the radio.
My brother never agrees with me. (= he never has the same views/opinion as me)
I may go to the match; it really depends on the weather. (= the weather will decide for me)
He suffers from (= has the unpleasant/bad experience of) a type of diabetes.
He got married to a girl he met in France.
I'm going to apologise (= say sorry) for the mistakes we made.
She has applied (= made a written request) for a new job.
They were waiting for me when I arrived.
Don't worry (= be nervous) about your exam; it'll be OK.
She complained (= said she was not satisfied) to the waiter about the food. (You complain to someone about something.)
He spends a lot of money on clothes and discos.
That dictionary belongs to Rolf. (= it is Rolf's dictionary)

Changes of meaning

Sometimes a verb may be followed by different prepositions, and the meaning changes.

He threw the ball to me. (= for me to catch it)
He threw the ball at me. (= in order to hit me; perhaps he was angry)

He shouted to me. (= in order to communicate with me)
He shouted at me. (= he was angry with me)

Adjective (+ preposition)

I was never very good at mathematics.
She is afraid of (= frightened of) flying.
I'm very keen on Italian food. (= I like Italian food very much)
She is similar to (= almost the same as) her older sister, but very different from her brother.
He's very interested in antique furniture.
I was surprised at (or by) the weather; it rained nearly every day.
I think she is aware of (= knows about) the problems in her class.
I'm tired of studying foreign languages. (= I've had enough and I want to stop)
The streets are full of rubbish. (= there is rubbish everywhere in the streets)
There is something wrong with this TV. (= the TV is not working/functioning correctly)
Exercises

14.1 Finish these questions with the correct preposition, then write a short answer for each one.

1 A: What exactly is she worried ..........? B: ........................................
2 A: What subjects is she good ..........? B: ........................................
3 A: Who is she waiting ..........? B: ........................................
4 A: What job is she applying ..........? B: ........................................
5 A: What programme is she listening ..........? B: ........................................
6 A: What did she complain ..........? B: ........................................
7 A: What did she apologise ..........? B: ........................................
8 A: Who does this car belong ..........? B: ........................................
9 A: I know she was angry but who was she shouting ..........? B: ........................................
10 A: What kind of films is she interested ..........? B: ........................................
11 A: What will the decision depend ..........? B: ........................................
12 A: What is she afraid ..........? B: ........................................

14.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

1 He suffers  a at me, but it missed.
2 She wasn't aware  b for a job in Australia.
3 He threw the book  c from a rare illness.
4 She complained  d to the man across the lake.
5 She said it was similar  e for the mistake.
6 She applied  f at his choice.
7 She shouted  g of clothes.
8 He said it depends  h to the one she has.
9 The suitcase was full  i of working at weekends.
10 She's tired  j of her mistakes.
11 She apologised  k on me.
12 I was very surprised  l about the bad service.

14.3 Complete these sentences in a way that is logical and grammatically correct. If possible, compare your answers with someone who has also done this exercise.

1 My steak was overcooked, so I complained ........................................
2 When I was a child I sometimes wore clothes that belonged ........................................
3 I want to help poor people, so I have decided to apply ........................................
4 I work quite hard but I'm not very good ........................................
5 In the summer a lot of people suffer ........................................
6 I've always been interested ........................................
7 I'm very keen ........................................
8 A lot of people are afraid ........................................
9 People in my country are very different ........................................
10 When I went to ........................................, I was very surprised ........................................

14.4 A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition. Sometimes the preposition is shown after the verb or adjective; sometimes it is illustrated in the example sentences. Use a dictionary to find the preposition that often follows these words.

fond (adj) concentrate (v) responsible (adj) rely (v)
15 Preposition + noun

Common patterns
There are many expressions formed by a preposition + noun, and sometimes a preposition is used with a particular meaning in a number of expressions, so they are very common.

A book by Stephen King, a film by Steven Spielberg, a song by Elton John.
You can go for a walk, for a drive, for a run, for a swim.
You can go in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening (but at night).
You can travel by car, by plane, by bus, by coach, by train, by taxi (but on foot).
I heard it on the radio; I saw it on TV; I spoke to her on the phone (but I read it in the newspaper, in a magazine).
The man in the dark suit (= wearing the dark suit); the woman in the red dress.

Fixed expressions
Sometimes it is difficult to know why a particular preposition is used, and you must learn these as fixed expressions.

I took his pen by mistake. (= I thought it was my pen)
I did all the work by myself. (= on my own; without help from others)
The shoes are made by hand. (= not by machine)
The workers are on strike. (= they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.)
I met them by chance. (= it wasn’t planned – it was luck)
The children are on holiday. (= they are having a holiday)

He broke the plate by accident. (= he did not want to do it – it was an error/mistake)

He broke the plate on purpose. (= he wanted to do it and intended to do it)

There are two million out of work. (= without a job)
There were at least fifty people at the party. (= a minimum of 50)

In time or on time?
Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.
Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always arrive on time. (= at 8.30)
Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always get there in time. (= before 8.30; I’m not late)
In the end we went home. (= finally, after a long period)
At the end of the book they get married.
The two men are in business. (= they are businessmen)
The two men are in Germany on business. (= they are there for work and not for a holiday)
I’ll see you in a moment. (= very soon)
I can’t speak to you at the moment. (= right now)
Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Cover the opposite page first.
1. I saw it ........ TV.
2. They came ........ car.
3. They are all ........ strike.
4. He is here ........ business.
5. I did it ........ my own.
6. It was written ........ Goethe.
7. We went ........ a walk.
8. I read it ........ a magazine.
9. He's ........ holiday this week.
10. She took it ........ mistake.
11. I went ........ the afternoon.
12. He came ........ foot.
13. The clothes are made ........ hand.
14. She broke it ........ accident.
15. He did it ........ purpose.
16. I'll see you ........ a moment.
17. I'm very busy ........ the moment.
18. It's very quiet ........ night.
19. We met ........ chance.
20. She's ........ least 25 years old.

15.2 Replace the underlined words with a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.
Example: The meeting was planned for 11 a.m. and we got here at 11 a.m. on time
1. I wrote the reports without any help from anyone else.
2. Did you get to the cinema before the film started?
3. Thousands of people are without jobs in my town.
4. She's making a phone call.
5. I saw the advertisement when I was watching TV last night.
6. He opened her letter because he thought it was addressed to him.
7. It was a very long journey but finally we got there.
8. He gets killed in the last scene of the film.
9. I'm afraid I'm very busy right now.
10. I saw her yesterday but I didn't plan to see her.

15.3 Respond to these questions with a negative answer and a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.
Example: Was it the man wearing the blue shirt?
........ No, the man in the white shirt ........
1. Did she hit him on purpose?
2. Did they go by car?
3. Are they here on holiday?
4. Did you read about the accident in the newspaper?
5. Did the others help him?
6. Do you want to sit down and have a rest?

15.4 Look at the prepositional phrases on the opposite page again, and make a list of the ones which are not exact translations from your own language. Put the list in your pocket and carry it around with you. Test yourself as often as possible by thinking of a translation and/or explanation and/or example sentence for each one.
16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning

Formation
A phrasal verb is a verb combined with an adverb or preposition, and occasionally with an adverb and preposition.

The price of petrol may go up (= increase) again next week.
He fell over (= fell to the ground) when he was running for the bus.
She’s promised to find out (= learn/discover) the name of that new hotel.
Who is going to look after (= take care of) the children when she goes into hospital?
If you don’t understand the meaning, you can look it up (= find the meaning in a book – in this case a dictionary).
He doesn’t get on with (= have a good relationship with) his parents. (verb + adv + prep)

Meaning
Sometimes the meaning of a phrasal verb is very similar to the base verb, and the adverb just emphasises the meaning of the base verb, e.g. stand up, wake up, save up, hurry up, sit down, lie down and send off (e.g. a letter). On other occasions, the adverb adds the idea of completing the action of the verb, e.g. drink up (= finish your drink), eat up (= finish eating), finish off.

But more often, the meaning of a phrasal verb is very different from the base verb, e.g. go up doesn’t mean the same as go; look after is different from look; and look after is also quite different from look up. An adverb or preposition can therefore change the meaning of a verb a great deal.

Here are some more examples of this type of phrasal verb.
It took her a long time to get over (= get better / recover from) her illness.
He told me to carry on (= continue) as far as the traffic lights.
I persuaded my wife to give up (= stop) smoking.
I can’t make any sandwiches because we’ve run out of bread. (= the bread is finished / all used, so we have no bread)
In the end my next-door neighbour had to come and put out (= extinguish/stop) the fire.

Multiple meaning
Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning, so you must be careful when you see a phrasal verb you think you know, or look up the meaning in a dictionary. In the examples marked *, the phrasal verb is much more natural than the explanation in brackets.

It was hot so I decided to *take off (= remove) my jacket.
I am always nervous when the plane *takes off (= leaves the ground).
I don’t think I’ll get through (= finish) this report before five o’clock.
I think she’ll get through (= pass) the exam.
I *picked up the rubbish (= took it from the ground or a low place) and put it in the bin.
I had to go to the shop to pick up (= collect) my photos.
My alarm clock didn’t go off (= ring) this morning.
The bomb could go off (= explode) at any minute.
The fish will *go off (= go bad) if you don’t put it in the fridge.
Exercises

16.1 Fill the gaps to complete the phrasal verb in each sentence.
1. We went round the school and ................. up all the rubbish.
2. I don't think they ever ................. out how the man escaped.
3. This milk smells horrible; I think it has ................. off.
4. Do you think they'll ................. through the exam next week?
5. They had a bad relationship at first, but she ................. on very well with him now.
6. The price has ................. up three times this year.
7. I agreed to ................. after my sister's cat when she goes to France.
8. We can ................. on until the teacher tells us to stop.
9. Why didn't your alarm clock ................. off this morning?
10. I'm afraid this photocopier has ................. out of paper, but you can use the other one in my office.

16.2 Complete these sentences in a logical way.
1. It will take her a long time to get over .........................
2. I'm afraid we've run out of .........................
3. He had to look it up .........................
4. I don't really get on with .........................
5. She came in and took off .........................
6. I had to put out .........................
7. Who is going to look after .........................
8. I went to the garage to pick up .........................
9. The plane took off .........................
10. My rent is going up .........................

16.3 Look at the dictionary entry for pick up, and match the meanings with the sentences below.

1. I said I would pick her up at the airport.
2. I picked up most of the rubbish that was on the floor.
3. Where did he pick up that strange accent?
4. Business was bad at the beginning of the year but it's picking up now.
5. I hurt my back when I tried to pick up that chair.

16.4 Write two sentences for each of these phrasal verbs to show their different meanings.

pick up take off go off get through
17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style

Look at Unit 16 on the form and meaning of phrasal verbs before you do this unit.

A Grammar: intransitive verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive and do not need a direct object.
The children are growing up. (= getting older and more mature)
The doctor told me to lie down on the bed.
Don’t wait out there. Please come in. (= enter)
I’m going to stay in (= stay at home) this evening.

With these verbs, you cannot put another word between the verb and adverb.

B Grammar: transitive verbs

But many phrasal verbs are transitive and do need a direct object. With some of these, you can put the object between the verb and adverb:

Put on your shoes ✓ Turn on the TV ✓
Put your shoes on ✓ Turn the TV on ✓

If the object is a pronoun, it must go between verb and adverb.
Put them on ✓ [NOT Put on them] Turn it on ✓ [NOT Turn on it]

Note: A dictionary will show you if you can put a word between the verb and adverb:

C Style: formal or informal

Some phrasal verbs can be used equally in written or spoken English. Sometimes this is because there is no other easy way to express the meaning of the phrasal verb.
I always wake up early, even at weekends.
The car broke down (= went wrong; stopped working) on the motorway.
The plane couldn’t take off because of bad weather.
Thieves broke into (= entered by force and illegally) the house and took money, credit cards and all my jewellery.

D Informal phrasal verbs

But most phrasal verbs are informal and are more common in spoken English. In written English there is often a more formal word with the same meaning.
We had to make up a story. (= invent/create from our imagination)
I can usually get by on about £200 a week. (= manage)
You can leave out question 7. (= omit, i.e. you don’t need to do question 7)
They’ve got a problem and they asked me to sort it out. (= resolve (it) / find a solution / do something about it)
Exercises

These exercises also practise and test some of the phrasal verbs from Unit 16.

17.1 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1. I'm not very good at making up
2. Could you lie down?
3. She asked me to turn on
4. Two men tried to break into
5. We have asked an engineer to come and sort out
6. Are you going to stay in?
7. Why did you leave out
8. I’m afraid we broke down
9. Can you get by
10. I grew up

17.2 Is it possible to separate the two parts of the phrasal verb in the sentences below? Look at the examples first, and use a dictionary to check your answers. (You can also check your answers in the answer key.)

Examples: I forgot to get off the bus. NO (get the bus off X)
          Why did he take off his trousers? YES (take his trousers off √)

1. She decided to carry on working.
2. He had to put out the fire.
3. Could you turn on the radio?
4. I had to lie down for a few minutes.
5. Could you go to the shop for me? We’ve just run out of coffee.
6. I think she made up that story.
7. I can’t get by on the money my parents give me.
8. Children grow up very quickly these days.
9. I turned off the light when I went to bed.
10. Can we leave out this question?

17.3 Make these texts more informal by changing some of the verbs to phrasal verbs with the same meaning. (There are three in each text.)

1. The cost of living is increasing all the time and I find it quite difficult to manage on my salary. But I think I can probably continue for a few months.
2. She told us to enter, but then we had to remove our shoes and I had to extinguish my cigarette.
3. The teacher told the class to invent a story to go with the picture in their books, and then continue with exercise 4. She said they could all omit exercise 5.

17.4 There are many phrasal verbs in other units. Can you find:

1. three phrasal verbs in Unit 21 on page 46?
2. three phrasal verbs in Unit 47 on page 98?
3. three phrasal verbs in Unit 48 on page 100?
4. three phrasal verbs in Unit 56 on page 116?
5. three phrasal verbs in Unit 62 on page 128?
6. three phrasal verbs in Unit 75 on page 154?
18 Idioms and fixed expressions

A What is an idiom?
An idiom is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, and often difficult to understand from the individual words. Many of the phrasal verbs in Units 16 and 17 were idiomatic. Here are some more common idioms.
The teacher told us to get a move on. (= hurry; be quick)
My wife and I take it in turns to cook. (= I cook one day, she cooks the next, etc.)
I don't know the answer off-hand. (= without looking it up or asking someone)
It's not far. We can take a short cut (= a quick way) through the park.
I'm not very good at small talk. (= social talk; not about serious things)
I'm sorry I can't make it (= come) on Friday.
I asked her to keep an eye on (= watch / look after) my suitcase while I went to the toilet.

B Fixed expressions
There are also expressions in English where the meaning is easy to understand, but the same idea in your language may need a completely different expression. In other words, if you just translate from your language, you may say something in English which is completely wrong. For this reason, you need to learn some expressions as idioms. For example:
A: What was wrong with the hotel?
B: Well, for a start it was next to a motorway and very noisy. And to make matters worse, there were factories on the other side of the road, which stayed open 24 hours a day.
It's not a problem in the short term (= at the moment) but in the long term (= for the longer future) we will need to think about it and probably spend some money on it.

C Using idioms
Idioms are important but they can be difficult to use correctly.
• With many idioms, if you make just a small mistake, it can sound strange, funny, or badly wrong. For example: get a move; a small talk; put an eye on, off-hands, etc.
• Idioms often have special features: they may be informal or funny or ironic; they may only be used by certain people (e.g. young children, or teenagers, or elderly people); they may only appear in limited contexts; they have special grammar. For these reasons, you can often 'learn' the meaning of an idiom but then use it incorrectly. For example:
After her husband died she was down in the dumps. (This idiom means 'sad and depressed' but is completely wrong here: the situation is too serious and the idiom is too informal.)

D Easy idioms to use
Some idiomatic expressions are used on their own, or with just one or two other words. These are often the easiest to use.
A: Are you coming?
B: Yes, hang on. (= wait)
A: What's up? (= what's the matter?)
B: Nothing.
A: Can I borrow your dictionary?
B: Sure, go ahead. (= help yourself; take it; do it)
A: I don't know which one to choose.
B: Well, make up your mind. (= make a decision)
A: I'm really sorry but I've forgotten to bring the book you lent me.
B: That's OK. Never mind. (= it's OK, don't worry; it's not important)
Exercises

18.1 It can be difficult to guess the meaning of an idiom, especially if you do not have the full context. Look at these examples (they are not presented on the opposite page).

1 I feel like a drink. 4 She was pulling my leg when she said that.
2 They’ve gone for good. 5 I can probably make do with a smaller flat.
3 I’m tied-up all afternoon.

Here is a fuller context for each of the above idioms. Can you guess the meaning now?

1 A: Are you hungry?
   B: No, but I feel like a drink.
2 A: Do you think they’ll ever come back to England?
   B: No, they’ve gone for good.
3 A: Do you have a lot of clients to see?
   B: Yes, I’m tied-up all afternoon.
4 A: Did she tell you there were no bathrooms in the hotel?
   B: Yes, I think she was pulling my leg when she said that.
5 A: Do you really need a large flat?
   B: Well, it’s nice to have a big place, but I can probably make do with a smaller flat.

18.2 Replace the underlined words in each dialogue with a suitable idiomatic expression from the opposite page. (But try to answer the questions before looking at the opposite page.) Can you think of similar expressions in your own language?

1 A: Is Rebecca here?
   B: Yes, wait a minute. I’ll get her.
2 A: Does it take long to get there?
   B: No, I know a quick way.
3 A: Could I borrow this for a minute?
   B: Yes, take it.
4 A: Sorry I can’t come on Thursday.
   B: That’s OK. Don’t worry.
5 A: What’s the matter?
   B: Nothing. Why?
6 A: Look after my things for a minute?
   B: Yeah, sure.
7 A: Do we have to go now?
   B: Yes, hurry up, otherwise we’ll be late.
8 A: You’ll have to decide soon.
   B: Yes I know, but it’s very difficult.

18.3 Complete the expressions in these sentences.

1 It wasn’t a very successful holiday. For a ………….. the beach was a long way from our hotel; then to make ………….. worse, the car broke down on the third day and we had to walk to the beach. the rest of the time.
2 We take it in ………….. to look after the dog.
3 She asked me about the times of the trains but I couldn’t tell her off………..
4 I don’t enjoy parties where you just stand around and make ………….. talk with lots of people you don’t know.
5 We can probably make ………….. with a three-roomed flat for the moment, but in the long ………….. we will have to think about moving into a bigger place.

18.4 Can you find at least three idiomatic expressions in this text. What do they mean?

I went to stay with my cousin last week. We are the same age but have very little in common: he loves sport and I hate it; I’m mad about music and he’s not interested in it. As you can imagine, we didn’t have a very good time together, and by about Thursday we were really getting on each other’s nerves, so I decided to come home.
Things we make

- a mistake (= an error)
- a meal (= prepare and cook something to eat)
- money (= become rich)
- friends
- a decision
- progress (U) (= improvement)

He made a few mistakes in the exam.
I had to make my own dinner last night.
He made a lot of money when he worked in America.
It's not always easy to make friends in a foreign country.
We can have the red ones or the green ones, but we must make a decision (choose the red or green) before 6 p.m.
I can't work when the children make a lot of noise.
Her English is good now; she has made a lot of progress.

Things we do

- homework (U)
- the housework (U) (= cleaning)
- subjects (= study subjects)
- a course
- the shopping (= buy food)
- research (U) (= detailed study in one subject)
- (someone) a favour (= do something to help someone)
- something/anything/nothing

I forgot to do my English homework last night.
My mother does all the housework in our house.
Did you do English at school?
I did a one-week course in word processing.
I always do the shopping at the weekend.
He's doing research in physics at Rome University.
I don't have any coffee. Could you do me a favour and lend me some?
I didn't do anything last night. That boy has done nothing all day.

Things we have

- a rest (= relax / do nothing)
- food (= eat food) and drink
- a drink (= drink something)
- a bath/shower
- a party
- a baby (= be pregnant or give birth)
- a (nice/great/terrible) time

They had a long rest after the game.
I had steak but Paul just had a cup of tea.
Let's have a drink before dinner.
I always have a bath when I get up.
I'm having a party for my birthday.
Mary is having a baby next month.
We had a very nice time in Switzerland last year.

Things we take

- an exam (also 'do an exam')
- a photo
- a decision (also 'make')
- a shower (also 'have')
- a bus/train/plane/taxi

I'm going to take four exams next month.
She took lots of photos on holiday.
I'm not very good at taking decisions.
I'm just going to take a shower before lunch.
We were late, so we took a taxi to the airport.

Note: Notice the use of be + adjective [NOT have + noun] in these expressions:
She was lucky
I'm hungry (= I want to eat)
I'm thirsty (= I want a drink)
Exercises

19.1 Cross out the incorrect verbs in these sentences. Both verbs may be correct.

1. I couldn't do/make the homework last night.
2. She's going to make/have a party for her birthday.
3. Did he do/make many mistakes?
4. I often make/do the housework.
5. Did you make/take many photos?
6. When do you take/do your next exam?
7. I want to do/make a course in English.
8. We must take/make a decision soon.
9. He is doing/making research in chemistry.
10. They did/made a lot of noise during the party.

19.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a suitable word or expression from the opposite page.

Example: I want to eat something. I'm hungry.

1. Let's drink something.
2. I'm going to prepare lunch tomorrow.
3. I'll clean the house at the weekend.
4. I ate a pizza in the restaurant.
5. I want a drink.
6. I usually buy my food on Saturday morning.
7. They both want to become rich.
8. When are they going to decide?
9. I think she enjoyed herself last night.
10. She is definitely improving. How many driving lessons has she had now?

19.3 Look at the four split pictures. Describe what happened using at least two expressions from the opposite page in each one. Look at the example first.

Last Friday evening I had a party but the next-door neighbour complained and said we were making too much noise.

19.4 Test yourself. Without looking at the opposite page, write down six things you can:

Examples: make a mistake... do the housework... have a rest...
Give, keep, break, catch, see

These common verbs have many different meanings (some of them in other parts of this book). This unit looks at some important meanings of these verbs, and in some cases they combine with specific nouns, e.g. give someone a ring, break the law, etc. You can learn these as expressions.

A. **Give**

I’ll give you a ring this evening. (= phone you this evening)
Could you give me a hand? (= help me)
Please give my regards to Paul. (= please say ‘hello’ to him from me) or
If you see Paul, please give him my regards.

B. **Keep**

The coat will keep you dry; the gloves will keep your hands warm. (= the coat/gloves will help you to stay dry/warm) [keep + noun/pronoun + adjective]
I keep losing my glasses; I keep getting backache. (= I lose my glasses / get backache again and again) [keep + -ing]
Please keep in touch. (= don’t forget to stay in contact, e.g. phone or write to me sometimes)
The school keeps a record (= clear written information) of the number of times that students are absent.

C. **Break**

He broke the world record again. (= created a new record, e.g. He ran the 100 metres in 9.85 seconds, which is 0.1 seconds faster than anyone else.)
Most people break the law at some point in their life. (= do something wrong / against the law)
In my first lesson with a new class, I usually do something to break the ice. (= to make people feel more relaxed when they first meet strangers)

D. **Catch**

We can catch a bus down the road. (= take a bus/travel by bus)
How did you catch that cold? (= get that cold/virus)
Catch the ball and throw it to James.

E. **See**

A: This part of the picture doesn’t look right compared with the other part.
B: Yes, I see what you mean. (= I understand what you are saying)
A: Do you think we need to hire a car?
B: I don’t know. I’ll see (= I’ll ask and find out) what the others say.
I don’t/can’t see the point of practising six hours a day. (= I don’t understand the reason for practising six hours a day; I think it’s crazy)
Exercises

20.1 Match the nouns on the right with the verbs on the left to form common word partnerships. (There is one noun you need to use twice.)

| break (2) | keep (2) | the ball | the law | a cold |
| catch (3) | give (2) | me a hand | a bus | in touch |
| a record | my regards to ... |

20.2 Fill the gaps with the correct verb in these sentences.

1. I don’t ................. the point of spending a lot of money on tickets when we can watch the concert on television.
2. These boots should ................. your feet warm and dry.
3. Please ................. my regards to your mother when you go back home.
4. Before we make a decision, let’s ................. what Patricia says.
5. If it’s too far to walk, we can ................. a bus.
6. I don’t know what the problem is, but I ................. getting headaches.
7. When I meet people on holiday I always promise to ................. in touch, but I never do.
8. I didn’t really enjoy the holiday because I ................. a cold on the second day and spent most of the week sneezing and blowing my nose.
9. When you organise a conference or a course, I think you need something to ................. the ice, otherwise people are a bit nervous of each other.
10. I don’t ................. the point of spending a lot of money on children’s clothes because they only last for a few months and then they’re too small.

20.3 What expressions are represented by these pictures? Can you complete the sentences below? Look at the example first.

Example: I’ll ................. you a ring ......

1. How did you .................? 3. I decided to .................
2. He agreed to ................. 4. He finally .................

20.4 Look through the key expressions in bold on the opposite page again. Can you translate these expressions into your own language? If so, do you use the same verb in your own language? Concentrate on the ones that are different.
Get: uses and expressions

A Meanings
Get is an informal word, so it is more common in spoken English than written English. It has many meanings. Here are some of the basic ones.

- receive
  - I got a letter this morning.
  - You get a certificate at the end of the course.
- obtain
  - She’s trying to get a new job.
  - Where did you get those shoes?
- become
  - (= a change in state)
  - It gets dark very early at this time of year.
  - My hands are getting cold.
- arrive
  - When did you get here?
  - I’ll phone when I get home.
- fetch
  - Could you get the books from the cupboard?
  - She went to get the children from school.

B ‘Get’ + past participle
We sometimes use the more informal ‘get’ + past participle:

- get married (= marry)
  - She got married in France.
- get divorced (= divorce)
  - They got divorced last year. (= the marriage has ended officially)
- get dressed (= dress)
  - I got dressed quickly and went out.
- get undressed (= undress)
  - He got undressed and got into bed.
- get changed (= change clothes)
  - When I got home I went to my room and got changed.
- get lost (= lose one’s way)
  - I got lost on my way to the station.

C Common collocations
Get is so common with certain words (often describing a change of state) that it is a good idea to learn them as expressions.

- It’s getting hot/cold
  - I’m getting hot/cold
  - dark/light
  - late
  - better/worse
  - busy
  - tired
  - better/worse
  - hungry
  - ready (= preparing)

Note: The expression getting better at something can describe an improvement in your ability to do something, e.g. I’m getting better at English/swimming; it also describes an improvement in your health, e.g. She was very ill but she’s getting better now. (≠ getting worse)

D Phrasal verbs and special expressions with ‘get’
I get on very well with my sister. (= I have a very good relationship with my sister)
How are you getting on?
  - (a) (= a general question: how is life?)
  - (b) (= what progress are you making, e.g. with your English?)
It’s difficult to get to know people in a foreign country. (= meet people and make friends)
I want to get rid of all my old records. (= sell them or throw them away or give them away)
My alarm wakes me up at 7 a.m., but I don’t usually get up (= get out of bed) until 7.15.
Exercises

21.1 Write a synonym for get in each of these sentences.
1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
2 I’m just going to get some paper from the office. I’ll be back in a minute.
3 What time did they get here last night?
4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
5 I couldn’t get a room; all the hotels were full.
6 We normally get five weeks’ holiday.
7 This book is getting quite interesting.
8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
9 He sent the letter last week but I didn’t get it until yesterday.
10 Do they often get here early?

21.2 Write appropriate sentences using I’m getting + adjective or it’s getting + adjective.
1 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes it is. I’ll turn on the heating.
2 A: .................................................................
   B: OK, let’s have something to eat, then.
3 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes me too. I’ll open the window.
4 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes it is. I think I’ll go to bed.
5 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes. I’ll put the lights on.
6 A: .................................................................
   B: No you’re not. You’re getting much better. You understand a lot now.

21.3 Rewrite each of these sentences using an expression with get. The meaning must stay the same.
1 They’re preparing to go out.
   They’re ...........................................................
2 I had to put on my clothes very quickly.
   I had to ...........................................................
3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?
   How do you ...................................................
4 I have a good relationship with my boss.
   I .................................................................
5 We’re going to throw away most of these chairs.
   We’re going to ...............................................?
6 Someone told me you’re doing a new course. How’s it going?
   Someone told me you’re doing a new course. ..............................................?

21.4 Write down examples of ‘get’ that you see or hear, then try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to get (= obtain) an idea of the ways in which this important word is used in English.
Go: uses and expressions

A  Come vs. go

Go usually expresses a movement away from the position the speaker is in now; come expresses a movement towards the speaker.

Imagine you are at school. The time is 9.30 a.m.

I had to go to Jimmy’s to pick up some books; then I went to the post office before I came to school.

Sometimes the speaker is in one place but imagines that they are already in another place. When Thomas meets Marta in Spain, he invites her to Switzerland. He says:

‘Would you like to come and visit me in Bern?’ (He imagines he is there and so her movement is towards him.)

We can also imagine that the listener is in a different place. Talking to Marta, Thomas says:

‘I’ll come to your flat at 7.30 p.m.’ (She will be at home, so his movement is towards her.)

Note: It is a similar difference between bring and take:

I think I’ll take my bike to the match and Peter can bring it back here tomorrow.

B  Different meanings of ‘go’

- When you leave a place in order to do an activity, you often express it either with go + ing noun or go (out) + for a + noun. Here are some common examples:

  We could go shopping. 
  They went sightseeing.

  She wants to go (out) for a walk.
  Let’s go (out) for a drive.

- Go is followed by certain adjectives to describe a change in state (usually to a worse state) with the meaning ‘become’ (get is also used with some adjectives).

  My brother’s hair is going grey, and my father is going bald. (= losing all his hair)

  The company went bankrupt last year. (= lost all its money and had to stop operating)

- Go is often used to describe the speed something is travelling (also do):

  We were going about 80 kph when the accident happened.

- When you want to say/ask if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere:

  Does this bus go to (= take me to) the National Gallery?

  I don’t think this road goes to (= leads to) the station.

C  Expressions

I’ve never tried bungee jumping but I’d love to have a go. (= try it)

How’s it going? (= How are you? infml) And you can use the same question if you want to know if something is easy, difficult, enjoyable, etc. For example, if you are doing an exercise in class, your teacher may ask: How’s it going? (also How are you getting on?)

It’s my go (also it’s my turn). This expression is used in games such as chess or monopoly where you move from one player to another, then back.
Exercises

22.1 Complete the dialogue with suitable forms of these verbs: come, go, bring, take. (There are two verbs that can be used in one of the answers.)

A: What time are you ........................ to Jim's party this evening?
B: I'm not sure because Christopher is ................................ here first, and then we'll ................................ together.
A: Right. Do you know what's happening about the music?
B: Yeah. I'm going to ................................ some CDs, and Sue is ................................ her guitar. I'll probably leave quite early though, so do you think you could ................................ my CDs back here tomorrow?
A: Yeah sure. What time.
B: Well, I want to ................................ to the shops in the morning. Could you ................................ before ten?
A: No problem.

22.2 Replace the underlined words and expressions. The meaning must stay the same.

1 It's hard to say exactly but I think the lorry was going about 60 kph.
2 Some people aren't interested in scuba diving but I've always wanted to have a go.
3 Come on John, it's your go.
4 Hi Sue. How's it going?
5 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station?
6 A: How's it going?
   B: Not bad. We've nearly finished the first exercise.

22.3 Complete these sentences with an -ing noun (e.g. riding), or for a + noun (e.g. for a walk).

1 I went ................................ this morning and bought some books and clothes.
2 We didn't have much food in the house so we decided to go out .................................
3 Why don't we go ................................. in that nice new bar near the square?
4 I wanted to go ................................. because I had never been to Venice before, but the others wanted to hire a car and go ................................. in the countryside.
5 The pool was at the end of the road, so we decided to go .................................
6 There are some stables near where we live with about a dozen horses, and we go ................................. most weekends.

22.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable word. Use a dictionary to help you.

1 You can wear a hearing aid if you go .................................
2 If business doesn't improve they could go .................................
3 You can dye (= change the colour of) your hair if you start going .................................
4 And you can wear a wig if you go .................................
5 If she sees the dog destroying her flowers, she'll go .................................

22.5 Look back at the different meanings of go (as verb and noun) on the opposite page. Translate these meanings into your own language. How many meanings use the word for go in your language? How many are expressed with a different word or in a different way? Compare with someone who speaks the same language if possible.

22.6 Now look up go in a good English dictionary. You will find many meanings (including phrasal verbs and idioms), but just concentrate on two or three that you think may be useful to you. Try to learn them. Write down the meanings with example sentences in your notebook. Write a translation as well if you want.
Apologies, excuses, and thanks

A Apologies (= saying sorry)

We can apologise (= say sorry) in different ways in different situations:

(I'm) sorry. I beg your pardon (fml). A general apology, e.g. you close the door in someone's face, interrupt someone, etc.

I'm very/terribly/so/awfully sorry. A stronger apology, e.g. you step on someone's foot or take their coat by mistake.

I'm very/really sorry I'm late. When you are late for an appointment.

Sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long. (= I will talk to you soon) Someone is waiting to see you and you are busy, e.g. with someone else.

Note: In formal situations (especially in writing), we often use apologise and apology:
I must apologise for (being late). I would like to apologise for (the delay. Unfortunately, ...) Please accept our apologies for the mistakes in your order. We tried to ...

B Excuses and promises

If the situation is quite important we usually add an explanation or excuse after the apology. An excuse is the reason for the apology, which may or may not be true. (If it is not true, it should still be a reason that people will believe.) Here are some common excuses:

I'm sorry I'm late but I was delayed/held up at the airport.
I'm sorry I'm late, but my train was cancelled. (= the train was timetabled but did not run)

Note: To be/get delayed or be/get held up (infml) both mean to be late because of a problem that is out of your control.

If you are responsible for a problem, you can offer or promise to do something about it.

I'm sorry about the mess in here. I'll clear it up. (= I'll tidy it up)
I'm sorry about the confusion, but I'll sort it out. (= I will solve the problems)

C Reassuring people

When people apologise to us, it is very common to say something to reassure them (= tell them that 'everything is OK'), and that we are not angry. These are all common expressions. Note that we often use two of them to emphasise the fact that 'it's OK'.

A: I'm sorry I'm late. B: That's OK. Don't worry. or Never mind. It doesn't matter. or That's OK. No problem.

D Thanks

These are the most common ways of thanking people in everyday situations:

A: Here's your pen. B: Oh, thank you / thanks (very much).
A: I'll answer that. B: Oh, thanks a lot (infml).
A: I'll post those letters for you. B: Oh, thank you. That's very kind of you.

If you go to someone's house for dinner, or stay with people in an English-speaking country, you will need to thank them for their hospitality (= when people are kind and friendly towards their guests). You could say something like this:

Thank you very much for inviting me. It's been a lovely evening.
Thank you very much for everything. You've been very kind.
Exercises

23.1 The opposite page includes a number of expressions, or groups of words that often appear together. How many can you remember? Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.

1 A: I’m ................... sorry.
   B: That’s OK.
2 A: I’m sorry .............. late. I’m afraid I got .............. up.
   B: That’s OK. No ..............
3 A: Sorry to .............. you waiting.
   B: That’s OK. No ..............
4 A: I’ll carry your bags for you.
   B: Oh, thank you. That’s very .............. of you.
5 A: I must .............. for missing the meeting.
   B: That’s OK. It doesn’t ..............
6 A: I’m busy right now but I won’t be ..............
   B: .............. mind. I’ll come back later.
7 A: I .............. your pardon.
   B: .............. OK. Don’t ..............
8 A: I think the boss has got a real problem.
   B: Yes, but don’t worry, he’ll .............. it out.

23.2 What could you say in these situations? (If it is an apology, give an explanation/excuse if you think it is necessary.)

1 You get on a bus at the same time as another person and he/she almost falls over.

2 You arrange to meet some friends in the centre of town but you are twenty minutes late.

3 You are pushing your car into a side road and a stranger offers to help you.

4 A friend borrows a pen from you and then loses it. When they apologise, you want to reassure them.

5 Some English friends invite you to dinner. How could you thank them as you leave their house at the end of the evening?

6 A colleague at work tells you that a number of files are in a mess: papers are all in the wrong order and he doesn’t know what to do. When he apologises to you for this mess, how can you reassure him, and what offer can you make?

7 You are unable to go to a meeting you arranged with a client at their office, and now you must write to them to explain.

8 Your company promised to send some information about new products to a customer last week. You still haven’t sent the information and must now write to explain.

23.3 Do you apologise, reassure, explain and thank people in similar ways in your own language? Read the left-hand page again and think about any differences between English and your language.
Requests, invitations and suggestions

A Requests and replies
We use different expressions to introduce a request – it depends who we are talking to, and the 'size' of the request ('big' or 'small'). These are some of the most common (the 'small' requests first), with suitable positive and negative replies.

A: Could you pass me the salt?    A: Could I (possibly) borrow your dictionary?
B: Yes, sure.                    B: Yes, of course. or Yes, help yourself (= yes, take it) or Go ahead.

A: Do you think you could possibly lend me two or three pounds?
B: Yes sure or I'm afraid I can't.
   I'm afraid not.
   I wish I could but, / I'm sorry but,

A: I was wondering if I could (possibly) leave work half an hour early today. or Would you mind if I left work ...
B: Yeah, no problem. or Well I'd rather you didn't (actually), because ...

B Invitations and replies

A: Would you like to go out this evening?
B: Yeah great / lovely / I'd love to or I'm sorry I can't.

A: We're going to a restaurant and we were wondering if you'd like to come with us?
B: I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.
   Oh, I'm afraid I have to look after my younger sister.

C Suggestions and replies
Here are some common ways of asking for and making suggestions (= ideas for things to do/say/make, etc.) and suitable replies.

Asking for suggestions
What shall we do tonight? Where shall we go this evening?

Making suggestions
How about (or what about) going to the cinema? (Note: How/What about + -ing)
We could go to the leisure centre and watch the basketball.
Why don't we try that new club in the main square?

Responding
Yeah, great / fine / OK / that's a good idea.
Yeah, if you like. (= if you want to go, then I am happy to go)
Yes, I don't mind. (= I have no preference)
I think I'd rather (= I would prefer to) go out for a meal.

Note: In this situation, learners often say 'it's the same for me'. We don't use this expression in English; we say I don't mind.
Exercises

24.1 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.
A: Do you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about go to see a film?
B: No, actually I think I'd rather to stay at home and do my homework.
A: Why you don’t do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?
B: Yeah good.
A: Great. What film shall we go to?
B: For me it's the same.

24.2 Complete these dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.
1 A: Could you .................. open that window? It's very hot in here.
   B: Yeah, ..................
2 A: Clive and Sally are here at the moment and we were .................. if you’d like to come over and join us for a meal this evening?
   B: Yes, I'd ..................
3 A: What .................. we do this evening?
   B: I don't know really. Any ideas?
   A: Why .................. go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.
   B: Yeah, that's a ..................
4 A: OK. Where .................. we go on Saturday?
   B: .................. going to the beach if the weather is good.
   A: Yeah. Or we .................. try that new sports centre just outside town.
   B: Mmm. I think I'd .................. go to the beach.
   A: Yeah OK, if you ..................
5 A: What .................. you like to do this weekend?
   B: I don't .................. You decide.

24.3 Here are eight requests, invitations or suggestions. Respond to each one as fast as you can with a suitable reply. If possible, do this activity with someone else: one of you asks the questions, the other answers.
1 Could I borrow a pen for a minute?
2 Do you think you could post a letter for me?
3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me?
4 Would you like to go out this evening?
5 I've got some tickets for a concert of classical music and I was wondering if you'd like to go with me?
6 How about going to a football match at the weekend?
7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English for an hour?
8 We could invite some other people from our English class to meet us as well.

24.4 There will be many situations when you make requests, invitations and suggestions in your own language, and respond to the requests, invitations and suggestions of others. Try using English expressions in place of your first language. If your friends don't understand, you can teach them a bit of English.
Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

A  Asking someone for their opinion
What do you think of his new book?
How do you feel about working with the others?
What are your feelings (pl) about the change in the timetable?
What’s your honest opinion of that painting?

B  Giving your opinion
I think Charles had the best idea.
I don’t think he knew very much about the subject.
Personally, I think his first book is terrible.
In my opinion we should sell the old car and buy a new one.
As far as I’m concerned the whole evening was a waste of time.

Note:
• If you want to say something isn’t a good idea you make ‘think’ negative:
  I don’t think it’s a good idea. [NOT I think it’s not a good idea.]
• Personally and As far as I’m concerned are more common in spoken English.
• As far as I’m concerned can mean, ‘this is my opinion and I don’t care what others think’.

C  Giving the opinion of others
According to one of the journalists on television (= in the opinion of this journalist), the
Prime Minister knew nothing about it.
The newspaper says that the Prime Minister knew weeks ago. (Note: we still use the verb
say when referring to a written opinion)

D  Agreeing with someone
We often agree by continuing with the same opinion or adding to it.
A: I think we should concentrate on this one project.
B: Yes, it’s better to do one thing well than two things badly.
But if we want to make it clear we agree, we can use these expressions:
Yes, I agree (with you). (Note: agree is a verb in English. [NOT I am agree])
Yes, I think you’re right.

E  Disagreeing with someone
It is very common in English to begin with a short expression of agreement, and then give a
different opinion. Here are some expressions used to introduce the disagreement:

| perhaps | but don’t you think ...
| maybe | that’s true | but I’m not sure that ...
| possibly | you could be right | but don’t forget ...

If you disagree strongly with someone you can say: I’m afraid I totally disagree (with you).

Note: When we want to disagree but not completely, we can use these phrases:
Yes, I partly agree (with you), but ...
I agree to some extent / a certain extent, but ...
Exercises

25.1 Complete these sentences in at least three different ways to ask people their opinion.

1 .......................................................... the proposed changes?
2 .......................................................... the new building?
3 .......................................................... the transport system?
4 .......................................................... the new divorce law?
5 .......................................................... the government’s decision to make parents responsible?

25.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word. (One word only.)

1 A: What did you think .................... it?
   B: Well, ..................... I didn’t like it.
2 ....................... to the radio, we won’t know the result until tomorrow morning.
3 I agreed with him to a certain .....................
4 As far as I’m ....................., we need to buy a new photocopier immediately.
5 I’m afraid I ..................... disagree with you.

25.3 Rewrite these sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. The meaning must stay the same.

1 In my opinion you can’t learn a language in three months.
2 I think the club needs to buy new players.
3 Yes, I think you’re right.
4 According to the newspaper, terrorists started the fire.
5 I agree with her to some extent.

25.4 Continue these short conversations. You can either agree with the point of view and add to the argument; or introduce a different point of view. If you introduce a different point of view, remember to start with a short expression of agreement first.

1 A: A lot of women are quite happy to stay at home and be housewives.
   B: ..........................................................
2 A: The state shouldn’t give money to people who don’t want to work.
   B: ..........................................................
3 A: People from developing countries need all the help we can give them.
   B: ..........................................................
4 A: We should think about legalising cannabis.
   B: ..........................................................
5 A: It can be very dangerous if people become too nationalistic.
   B: ..........................................................
26 Specific situations and special occasions

You will know many of these expressions but may not be sure exactly how they are used.

A Greetings: ‘hello’
Hi/Hello. How are you? This is the normal greeting when you meet someone you know. (also: How’s it going? infml) The usual reply is: Fine thanks. And you? Or possibly, Not bad. How about you?
Good morning, good afternoon, good evening These expressions are used at different times of the day (most people say Good morning until lunchtime). British people do not usually say Good day, but Australians do.
How do you do? For formal situations when you meet someone for the first time. The reply can be the same (How do you do?) or Pleased/nice to meet you.

B Farewells: ‘goodbye’
Nice to meet you. For formal situations, when you say goodbye to someone you have just met for the first time.
(Nice to have met you.)
Bye. See you later. If you plan to see someone you know later the same day.
Bye. See you soon. When you know you will see them again, but have no specific plans to meet them.
Goodnight When you say goodbye to someone late at night, or if you (or they) are going to bed.
A: Have a nice weekend.
B: Yes. Same to you. The statement and reply when you say goodbye to a colleague/friend at work, school or college on Friday afternoon.

C Happy occasions and celebrations
Happy Birthday To someone on his/her birthday. You can also say Many Happy Returns, and write either expression in a birthday card.
Happy/Merry Christmas To someone just before or on Christmas Day. You also write this in a card.
Happy New Year To someone at the beginning of the year.
Congratulations To someone who has just done something, e.g. passed an exam or got a job. In many situations we can also say Well done.

D Special conventions
Excuse me (a) To get someone’s attention (b) When you want to get past, e.g. in a crowded place (c) To tell others you are going to leave the room.
Sorry (a) To say sorry, e.g. you stand on someone’s foot. You could also say I beg your pardon in this situation. And (b) When you want someone to repeat what they said.
Cheers To express good wishes when you have a drink with other people.
Informally it can also mean ‘goodbye’ (also cheerio) and ‘thank you’.
Good luck To wish someone well before a difficult situation, e.g. a job interview, an exam, a driving test, etc.
Bless you To someone when they sneeze. They can reply by saying Thank you.

Note: In English there is no special expression when people start eating. If you want to say something, you can use the French expression Bon appetit, but it is not common.


**Exercises**

**26.1** What message could you say on the phone or write in a card to these people?

1. A friend. Next week is 25 December.
2. A friend who is 21 tomorrow.
3. A friend on January 1st or soon after.
4. A very good friend who has just passed some important exams.
5. A friend who is going to take his driving test in three days’ time.
6. A friend you know you are going to meet in the next few days/weeks.

**26.2** Complete the conversations in a suitable way.

![Conversation 1]

This is Charles Dobson.

![Conversation 2]

Thanks.

![Conversation 3]

![Conversation 4]

**26.3** What could you say in these situations?

1. You are in a meeting. Someone enters the room and says you have an important telephone call. What do you say as you leave?
2. Someone says something to you but you didn’t hear all of it. What do you say?
3. You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say?
4. You are in a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them?
5. You are staying with some English friends. What do you say to them when you leave the room in the evening to go to bed?
6. You are in the street. A woman walks past you and at the same time something falls out of her bag. She has her back to you. What do you say?
7. A friend tells you they have just won a competition.
8. Another friend is going for a job interview this afternoon.

**26.4** Here are some more special expressions. When do we use them and do you have equivalent expressions in your own language?

hard luck  say ‘cheese’  watch out  I’ve no idea
Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns (e.g. information):
- don’t have a plural form (informations); is
- are used with a singular verb (the information are);
- cannot be used with the indefinite article ‘a/an’. (I want an information)

These uncountable nouns are often countable in other languages. Look at them carefully.

He refused to give me more information about the hotel.
She gave me lots of advice about the best dictionary to buy.
We are going to sell all the furniture. (= tables, chairs, armchairs, desks, etc.)
My knowledge of German is very limited.
You need a lot of equipment for camping (e.g. tent, sleeping bag, things for cooking, etc.)
She is making good progress in her English. (= her English is improving / getting better)
We had fabulous weather in Italy.
The teacher gave us a lot of homework last night.
I never take much luggage (= bags and suitcases) when I go on holiday.

In dictionaries

Countable nouns are usually shown with a (C) after them; uncountable nouns have (U) after them; and some nouns can be countable with one meaning and uncountable in another.

book (C) The books are on the table.
housework (U) I did a lot of housework this morning.
hair (U) My hair is getting very long and untidy. I need to get it cut.
hair (C) There is a hair on my dinner plate.

Plural nouns

Plural nouns (e.g. trousers):
- only have a plural form and cannot be used with ‘a/an’ (a-trouser) trousers
- usually have a plural verb (the trousers is ...) are
- some plural nouns can be made singular using a pair of, e.g. a pair of trousers/sunglasses

Other words which are usually plural include:
I bought a pair of jeans yesterday.
These shorts are too long.
I bought a new pair of pyjamas when I went into hospital.
The scissors are on the table.
When it’s sunny I wear sunglasses for driving.
These stairs are dangerous.
You can weigh yourself on those scales over there.
The headphones on my new walkman are great.
**Exercises**

27.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. I need some informations.
2. We had a lovely weather.
3. The furnitures are very old.
4. I'm looking for a new jeans.
5. Your hairs are getting very long.
6. Do you have a scissors?
7. We had a lot of homeworks yesterday.
8. Do you think she's making a progress with her English?
9. These trousers is too small.
10. She gave me some good advices.

27.2 Are these nouns countable, uncountable, or countable with one meaning and uncountable with another? Use a dictionary to help you. If they can be countable and uncountable, write sentence examples to show the difference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>butter</th>
<th>cup</th>
<th>housework</th>
<th>insurance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spaghetti</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>grape</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>coin</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>travel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.3 Complete these dialogues using a suitable plural noun or uncountable noun from the opposite page. Make sure the form of each word is correct. Look at the example first.

*Example:* A: It’s too hot for jeans.
B: You need a pair of shorts.

1. A: I have to cut this paper into three pieces.
   B: You need __________________________

2. A: I can’t see because the sun is in my eyes.
   B: You need __________________________

3. A: I don’t know what to do when I leave school.
   B: You need __________________________

4. A: My room looks so empty.
   B: You need __________________________

5. A: I want to find out how much I weigh.
   B: You need __________________________

6. A: I can’t play my music loud because my mother always complains.
   B: You need __________________________

7. A: I’m starting to feel cold in bed.
   B: You need __________________________

8. A: My teacher said my English wasn’t getting any better.
   B: You need __________________________

27.4 Read this text from a radio broadcast. Can you find two more uncountable nouns and two more plural nouns? (These words are not included on the opposite page.)

Traffic has been bad throughout the day because of roadworks on the A40 at Uxbridge which are causing long delays for motorists heading into London. The authorities are advising drivers to avoid the area if at all possible, and we will, of course, keep you informed of the situation with the latest news every half hour, so don’t go away.
Verbs + -ing form or infinitive

A  Verb + -ing form

Some verbs are followed by an -ing form if the next word is a verb:

- enjoy
- finish
- imagine
- (don't) mind
- can't stand (= hate)
- feel like (= want/desire infml)
- give up (= stop doing something for the last time)
- avoid (If you avoid something, you keep away from it; if you avoid someone, you stay away from them. You do these things by intention.)
- admit (If you admit something, you agree it is true, and usually it is something bad.)
- deny (= the opposite of admit; in other words, you say something isn't true)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of the more difficult verbs.

I stayed in last night but I feel like going out this evening.
At the police station, he admitted stealing the woman's money but denied hitting her.
Cigarettes are very expensive, so he's decided to give up smoking.
I've lived in New Zealand all my life; I can't imagine living anywhere else.
Some people can't stand working at the weekend but I don't mind. (= it's not a problem)
I always try to avoid driving through the city centre during the rush hour.

B  Verb + infinitive

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive if the next word is a verb:

- offer
- want
- seem
- decide
- hope
- forget
- mean (= intend, plan)
- expect (= think or believe something will happen)
- manage (= be able to do something, even when it is difficult)
- refuse (= say 'no' when someone asks you for something)
- promise (= say you will definitely do something, or that something will definitely happen)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of some of the verbs.

We were very busy but we managed to finish before 6 p.m.
It was getting late and there were no buses so I offered to take them home in my car.
He hit one of the boys but he didn't mean to do it; I meant to go but I forgot.
I asked her to carry the suitcases but she refused to help.
I don't expect to see them before next week.
They promised to phone as soon as they arrive.

C  Verb + infinitive without 'to'

There are two common verbs followed by an object + infinitive without 'to'. They are:
- make
- let

My parents make me do my homework every night. (= they force me to do my homework)
My parents let me go out after I've done my homework. (= they allow/permit me to go out)

D  Verb + -ing form or infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an -ing form or infinitive, but the meaning is very similar, e.g. love, like, hate, and prefer. But with some verbs there is a difference in meaning:

I remembered to buy a present for my brother. (= I didn't forget to buy a present)
I remember buying her a present. (= it's in my memory; it happened and I remember)
Exercises

28.1 Cross out the incorrect answers.
1  We decided to work / working during our holiday.
2  She promised to help / helping us.
3  I don’t feel like to go / going for a walk at the moment.
4  He forgot to take / taking the cake out of the oven.
5  Do you really hate to drive / driving when it’s wet?
6  I can’t imagine to eat / eating pasta every day of the week.
7  Most of the time she prefers to work / working on her own.
8  I don’t remember to go / going to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
9  He hopes to finish / finishing his thesis by the end of the month.
10 I don’t mind to help / helping you if I’m not busy.

28.2 Complete part c) of each number in a suitable way.
1  Most people want:
   a) to be rich   b) to get married   c) ..............................................................
2  A lot of people can’t stand:
   a) getting wet   b) getting up early   c) ..............................................................
3  Most people enjoy:
   a) going to parties   b) lying on a beach   c) ..............................................................
4  On hot days most people don’t feel like:
   a) working   b) eating big meals   c) ..............................................................
5  Most people expect
   a) to be happy   b) to find a job they will like   c) ..............................................................
6  A lot of people don’t mind:
   a) washing-up   b) ironing   c) ..............................................................
7  Some parents make their teenage children:
   a) wear certain clothes   b) do housework   c) ..............................................................
8  Other parents let their teenage children:
   a) wear what they like   b) stay out all night   c) ..............................................................

Now think about each of the above statements. Are they true, and are they (or were they) true of you? If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

28.3 Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for a hotel, but she must pay for the air fare and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present and pay him back in six months. But first they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

1  What did Julie’s father let her do when she was 17?  He let ..............................................................
2  And what did he offer to do?  He offered ..............................................................
3  But what did he refuse to do?  He refused ..............................................................
4  In return what did Julie promise?  She promised ..............................................................
5  What did the three girls decide?  They decided ..............................................................
Verb patterns

A  Verb + object

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>object phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>proposed (= suggested fml)</td>
<td>the plan</td>
<td>at the meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The travel agent</td>
<td>confirmed (= said it was sure)</td>
<td>my reservation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>discussed (= talked about )</td>
<td>the film</td>
<td>for hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B  Verb + object + question word

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>question word</th>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>to find it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>asked</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>why</td>
<td>we wanted it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>everyone</td>
<td>what</td>
<td>to do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: A common mistake is: ‘He explained me what to do.’ After explain + question word, there is no direct object. We say: ‘He explained what to do / what I had to do.’

C  Verb + object + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>asked</td>
<td>everyone</td>
<td>to leave.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>to wait</td>
<td>outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The doctor</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>to stay</td>
<td>in bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>the others</td>
<td>to help</td>
<td>us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>persuaded</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>to go</td>
<td>to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>warned</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>careful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

persuade = make somebody change their mind.
John wanted to get an IBM but I persuaded him to buy an Apple Macintosh.
warn = tell someone of a possible danger, and often tell them what they should(n’t) do.
She warned the children not to swim near the rocks.

D  Verb + (object) + (that) clause

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>(that) clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>(that) it was good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>suggested</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>(that) we go together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>insisted</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>(that) we work until 5 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>(that) it was expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>warned</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>(that) it was dangerous.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

insist = demand something strongly and not accept refusal.
She insisted that I stay with them (= she did not want me to stay in another place).
We can also use -ing after suggest, e.g. She suggested going there together.

E  Verb + (object) + preposition

He insisted on paying for the hotel. (Note: use the -ing form of the verb after a preposition)
They blamed the driver for the accident. (= they said he was responsible / it was his fault)
He complained (to the manager) about the bad service. (= he said he was not satisfied)
The manager apologised (to the customer) for the bad service. (= the manager said sorry)
Exercises

29.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. (Most are the result of translating from the first language.)
1 She said me the film was terrible.
2 He told it’s not possible.
3 Can you explain me what to do?
4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
5 Can we discuss about my report?
6 I want that he leaves.
7 I need to confirm me the booking.
8 I apologised my mistake.
9 She advised me buy a dictionary.
10 She insisted to pay.

29.2 What is the missing verb in each of these sentences? (There may be more than one answer.)
1 I didn’t understand how the photocopier worked but she kindly ........................................... me.
2 She wasn’t satisfied with her course, so she went to see the Principal to ...........................................
3 It was a terrible thing to say to him, but she refused to ............................................................... 
4 He knew it was dangerous but he didn’t ............................................................... me.
5 I didn’t want to go at first but she ............................................................... me.
6 She advised them to stay here but they ............................................................... on going.
7 I booked the room by phone but they asked me to ............................................................... it in writing.
8 I don’t think it was my fault but they still ............................................................... me.
9 She didn’t know the way but I ............................................................... how to get there.
10 They watched the film together and then they ............................................................... it in small groups.

29.3 Complete these sentences in a logical way.
1 Some of us were getting hungry so I suggested ............................................................... 
2 They were making a lot of noise next door and I told ............................................................... 
3 She went to that new Italian restaurant and said ............................................................... 
4 We read the book for homework and discussed ............................................................... 
5 The streets are quite dangerous at night so I insisted ............................................................... 
6 It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn’t persuade ............................................................... 
7 She wasn’t feeling very well and the teacher advised ............................................................... 
8 The whole team played badly but most of the newspapers have blamed ............................................................... 
9 The water there can make you ill and I warned ............................................................... 
10 If you don’t understand the instructions, someone will explain ............................................................... 

29.4 When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. So, look at the grammar information about a word in a good dictionary, and always look carefully at the example sentences, then write one or two of your own. Do it for these three examples. What patterns from the opposite page are used after these verbs?
order recommend prevent
Adjectives

‘Scale’ and ‘limit’ adjectives

(both absolutely) terrible
awful
dreadful

(very) bad
OK
(very) good
(both absolutely) marvellous
wonderful
great
terrific

We can use very before ‘scale’ adjectives e.g. very good, very bad; we can use absolutely before ‘limit’ adjectives e.g. absolutely awful, absolutely great. (You cannot say ‘very wonderful’; you cannot say ‘absolutely good’.) Here are some more examples.

Scale
big
small
tired
interesting
surprised

Limit
huge/enormous
tiny
exhausted
fascinating
astonished

Scale
hot
cold

Limit
crowded (= full of people)
packed
cold

frightened (= afraid of sth.)
terrified

hungry

starving (infml)

Adjectives ending -ing and -ed

There is a large group of adjectives which can have an -ing or -ed ending. The -ing ending is used on adjectives which describe a person or thing or situation; the -ed ending is on adjectives which describe the effect this person, thing or situation has on us.

It was such a boring party; I was bored, and so was everyone else.
I didn’t think the film was very frightening, but my younger brother was frightened by it.
I think the students are depressed largely because the weather is so depressing.

Other examples of common adjectives ending -ing and -ed include:

surprising/surprised
exhausting/exhausted
confusing/confused
frightening/frightened
astonishing/astonished
interesting/interested

exciting/excited
terrifying/terrified
tiring/tired
fascinating/fascinated
embarrassing/embarrassed
disappointing/disappointed

Look at these examples to help you with the meaning of some of these words.

John wasn’t very good at maths, so I was very surprised when he passed the exam. And I was astonished when I discovered that he’d got 98%.

In London there are lots of streets with the same name and it’s very confusing if you are a tourist. Another problem is that it’s a huge place. We walked everywhere on our last trip and we were exhausted at the end of each day. But it’s an exciting city, with so much to do.

It’s been a terrible week for Greg. He was very disappointed last Saturday because he played badly in an important match. Then on Monday, his girlfriend left him for someone else, so he’s very depressed at the moment.

One of our teachers can never remember our names. It seemed funny at first, but now it’s getting a bit embarrassing.
Exercises

30.1  Write at least one limit adjective for these scale adjectives. Cover the opposite page before you begin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>hot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprised</td>
<td>hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>frightened</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

30.2  Rewrite this postcard using limit adjectives where possible to give a more positive and/or more extreme effect.

Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is good—we’ve got a big room and the food is nice. It’s been hot every day so far, so we’ve spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else—it’s very crowded. But the sea is actually cold—that’s because it’s the Atlantic coast, I suppose. Tomorrow we’re going to walk to a small seaside village about ten Kilometres from here—I imagine I’ll be really tired by the time we get back, but it does sound an interesting place and I’m looking forward to it. I’ll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it. Until then, love, Benita

30.3  Complete these dialogues using the correct limit adjective in the correct form (-ing or -ed).

1. A: Was it very tiring?
   B: Yes we were absolutely .........................
2. A: I was very interested in her talk.
   B: Yes it was absolutely .........................
3. A: Maria said it was a frightening film.
   B: Yes it was absolutely .........................
4. A: It was a surprising decision, wasn’t it?
   B: Yes I was absolutely .........................
5. A: Was it very cold?
   B: Oh yes, it was ...............................

30.4  Can you think of an adjective from the opposite page to describe how the people felt in each of these situations?

1. They walked about ten miles in the morning, then spent the afternoon helping some friends to cut down some trees.
2. From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach.
3. They decided to wear jeans to the party but when they arrived everyone else was wearing formal evening dress.
4. One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station.
5. When they got home there was a new car outside their house. They went inside and there was a new sofa in the lounge and a new dining table in the dining room.
31 Prepositions: place

A At, On, In

Learn these rules.

at a point/place x e.g. I met her at the bus stop. She lives at 43 Duke Road.

He’s at work (i.e. not at home). They’re at a party tonight.

on a surface x e.g. The book is on the desk. We sat on the floor.

in an area or space e.g. Malawi is a country in Africa. She lives in Milan. He’s in the kitchen. The key’s in my pocket. Put it in the box.

B Opposites

Some prepositions form pairs of opposites.

\[ \begin{array}{cc}
\text{up} & \text{down} \\
\text{into} & \text{out of} \\
\text{over/above} & \text{under/below} \\
\text{in front of} & \text{behind}
\end{array} \]

Note: Over/above are often synonymous, so are under/below, but over and under sometimes suggest movement.

When we flew over Paris we couldn’t see much because we were above the clouds. Below us was the river which ran under the bridge.

C Here are some more common prepositions of place

We drove along the river, round the lake, past the old castle, and through the village.

We came over the bridge, and parked next to the house, which was opposite the hotel.

Our house is between two shops and it is near a bus stop; you just go across the road and walk along the other side towards the church.
Exercises

31.1 Fill the gaps with at, on or in.

1 I put the books ........... the table.
2 The butter is ........... the fridge.
3 We saw them ........... the bus stop.
4 I met her ........... a party.
5 She works ........... Barcelona.
6 The dictionary is ........... my desk.
7 I sat ........... the bed and wrote the letter.
8 I left my books ........... school.
9 There was still a lot of snow ........... the ground when I arrived.
10 He lives ........... a very nice area.

31.2 Answer the questions using the opposite preposition.

1 Was he standing in front of the picture?
   No, ..................................................
2 Is it up the hill to his house?
   No, ..................................................
3 Did you climb over the fence?
   No, ..................................................
4 Did you see her get into the car?
   No, ..................................................
5 Did you fly below the clouds?
   No, ..................................................
6 Does she live in the flat above you?
   No, ..................................................

31.3 Look at the map and complete the description of the route you took on the first day.

We took the boat (!) ........... the channel, then we drove (?!) ........... France and (?!) ........... Switzerland, where we spent the first night (?!) ........... a small town quite (?!) ........... Lucerne.

Now look at the diagram and complete the description of the second day.

The next morning we walked (?!) ........... a river which ran (?!) ........... two mountains. We had lunch (?!) ........... a small restaurant and then walked (?!) ........... the lake and (?!) ........... the small town of Stans, before going back.
Adverbs: frequency and degree

A Frequency (= how often)

always frequently regularly quite often sometimes occasionally seldom (fml.) hardly ever never rarely

Note:
- Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb with the exception of the verb ‘to be’:
  - I occasionally see them. They hardly ever go to the cinema now.
  - She is often late these days. I’ve never tried Korean food.
- Sometimes, occasionally and often can go at the beginning or end of the sentence:
  - They go to the zoo quite often. I play tennis occasionally.
  - Sometimes my parents give me money. Occasionally I work at the weekend.

B Degree (= how much)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>OK</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>extremely</td>
<td>slightly</td>
<td>a bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>fairly</td>
<td>quite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather</td>
<td>rather</td>
<td>pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fairly</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite</td>
<td>extremely</td>
<td>incredibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
- Rather is more formal than the other words and often describes a negative situation:
  - We had rather bad weather. The food was rather expensive.
- For a positive situation, rather often indicates that something is better than we expected:
  - Her cooking is rather good actually. (I didn’t expect that, so it was a very nice surprise.
- Incredibly, pretty and a bit are informal and mostly used in spoken English; a bit is mostly used before negative adjectives (not positive ones) or adjectives with a negative prefix.
  - The food was pretty good. (= nearly ‘very’ good) That Ferrari is incredibly expensive.
  - The hotel was a bit disappointing, actually. I thought she looked a bit unhappy.

C Almost/nearly

It’s almost/nearly five o’clock. (= it is probably about 4.57)
I almost/nearly lost the match. (= I won but only just; only by a small amount)
Note: almost the same NOT quite the same

D Hardly

Hardly + a positive often has the same meaning as almost + a negative:
I hardly had anything to eat for lunch. (= I had almost nothing)
She could hardly walk after her operation. (= she almost couldn’t walk)
Note: In the above sentences you can also use barely with the same meaning.
Exercises

32.1 Organise these mixed up words into correct sentences.
1 brother often us Sunday visits on my
2 me ever phones she hardly
3 have leg my broken never I
4 visit saw I hardly his him during
5 get occasionally I early up
6 always she Monday on early is work for a

32.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has the same meaning.
1 She seldom goes to conferences now.
2 I can barely remember the first house we lived in.
3 There were almost fifty people there, you know.
4 I thought it was a bit disappointing, didn’t you?
5 I’m afraid I’m extremely busy next week.

32.3 Respond to these sentences using ‘rather’ to show surprise. (You can also add ‘actually’ at the end of the sentence.)
1 A: Was it a boring evening?
   B: No, it ..........................................................
2 A: Were the children very noisy?
   B: No, they ..........................................................
3 A: I’ve heard it’s a very dirty town. Is that true?
   B: No, it ..........................................................
4 A: Was the weather awful?
   B: No, it ..........................................................

32.4 Change the underlined adverbs to make the first two sentences slightly more positive, and the last three sentences slightly less negative.
1 I thought they were very good.
2 He’s been getting quite good marks in his exams.
3 John said the flat was very small.
4 They said it was fairly boring.
5 The clothes were very expensive.

32.5 Put a frequency adverb into each of these sentences to make a true sentence about yourself. Make sure you put the adverb in the correct place. Compare your answers with someone else if possible.
1 I buy clothes I don’t like.
2 I clean my shoes.
3 I remember my dreams.
4 I give money to people in the street if they ask me for money.
5 I speak to strangers on buses and trains.
6 I’m rude to people who are rude to me.

Now think about each of your answers to the above sentences. Do you think they are:
   a) very typical?  b) fairly typical?  c) slightly unusual?  d) extremely unusual?
If you compared your answers with someone else, how would you describe their answers?
Time and sequence

When and as soon as

I'll phone my uncle when I get home. / As soon as I get home I'll phone my uncle.
When you've finished you can go home. / You can go home as soon as you've finished.

Note: The meaning is the same, but as soon as suggests it is more immediate. Note also that both items can be followed by the present tense or the present perfect (but not will).

Two things happening at the same time

Pat wrote some letters while I cooked the dinner. (two actions in the same period of time)
The accident happened while I was on my way to work. (Here there is a longer action ‘on my way to work’ and a shorter action ‘the accident’). We can also use when or as here.
I saw him (just) as I came out of the office. (For two very short actions we use as (not while), and we often use just as to emphasise that these two short actions happened at exactly the same moment: He opened the door just as I touched the handle.)

One thing after another

We met the others in the cafe, and then we went to the match.
I finished my homework, after that I played a couple of computer games.
After my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.
We had something to eat before we went out.

Note: We can also follow before and after with an -ing form:
After visiting New York, I ... We had something to eat before going out.

A sequence of actions

We had a great holiday. First of all we spent a few days in St. Moritz. Then / After that we drove down to the Italian Riviera and stayed in Portofino for a week. Finally, we went back to Switzerland and visited some old friends in Lucerne.

Note:
- If one action happens soon after the other, we often use afterwards in place of after (that): First of all we met the others for a meal, and afterwards we went to the disco.
- If you want to say that something happened after a lot of time and/or a lot of problems, you can use eventually or in the end.

We took several wrong turnings and the traffic was awful, but eventually we got there.

A sequence of reasons

There are different combinations of words and phrases we can use here:

SON: Why can't we go away this weekend?
DAD: First(ly) because I'm busy this weekend. Second(ly) you've got a lot of school work to do. And third(ly) we're planning to go away next weekend.

Note:
- We can also start with the phrases to begin with / to start with.
- In spoken English we can start with for one thing, followed by and for another (thing).
- For the second or final reason, we sometimes use (and) besides or anyway (infml):

We can't go to that club because it's too far. And besides, I'm not a member.
Exercises

33.1 Cross out the incorrect answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.
1 I'll give them your message as soon as I get / will get there.
2 Maria cleaned the kitchen as / while I did the bathroom.
3 We must go to that gallery before leave / leaving.
4 I had a lot of problems at the shop but eventually / finally they agreed to give me a refund.
5 The phone rang while / just as I was leaving the house.
6 The letter arrived while / as we were getting ready.

33.2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.
1 We had a game of squash and afterwards ..............................................................
2 I'll meet you as soon as ...........................................................................................
3 I must remember to lock the back door before ....................................................... 
4 I think I dropped the letter as ..................................................................................
5 I looked up half of the words in my dictionary while ...............................................
6 We had to wait for hours but eventually ..................................................................
7 My car is too big for you to drive. And besides, .....................................................
8 I saw him break the window just as .........................................................................

33.3 Add a final sentence (starting with a suitable link word or phrase) to each of these texts.
1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening when we could go to Karl's party?
   B: Well, for one thing because my ex-boyfriend will be there and I really don't want to see
   him. ................................................................................................................................
2 A: What did you do?
   B: First of all we spent a few days in Paris. After that we took the train down to Marseilles
   and stayed with friends. ............................................................................................
3 A: Why can't we send one of our staff to the conference?
   B: Well, to start with, I don't think that the company should send anyone to the
   conference. And .........................................................................................................

33.4 You spent a week at a hotel and had these problems:
- There was very little variety in the food.
- The service was very slow.
- When you mentioned this to the staff, they were very rude.

The manager was on holiday during your stay, so you have decided to send a letter of
complaint. Write the next part of this letter and then look at the model answer for the whole
letter in the answer key.

Dear Sir/Madam

I have just returned from a weekend break at The
Royal Malvern Hotel, and I am writing to express my
dissatisfaction with the food and service provided
in your restaurant.
Addition and contrast

A In addition, moreover, etc. (X and Y)

When you add a second piece of information in a sentence to support the first piece of information, you often use and, e.g. The food is excellent and very good value. When you put this information in two sentences, these link words and phrases are common:
The food is usually very good. Furthermore, it is one of the cheapest restaurants in town. The set menu is £10, which is excellent value. In addition, you get a free glass of wine. The restaurant has a reputation for excellent food. It’s also very good value. The food is excellent in that restaurant. It’s very good value as well (or too).
You get very good food in that place. What’s more, it’s excellent value.

Note: The first two examples are more formal and more common in written English. The last two examples are more common in spoken English.

B Although, in spite of, etc. (X but Y)

When you want to contrast two pieces of information in a single sentence and say that the second fact is surprising after the first, you can use these link words:
She still won the game although / though / even though she had a bad knee.
They still went for a walk in spite of the fact that it was pouring with rain.
The service is worse despite the fact that they have more staff.

Note:
In these examples you can also begin the sentence with the link word:
Although she had a bad knee, she still won the game.
It is very common to use still in these sentences to emphasise the surprise (as in examples). In the last two example sentences you can use a noun or -ing form:
They went for a walk in spite of the rain. The service is worse despite having more staff.
After although, you can only have a noun/pronoun + verb (i.e. although she had a bad knee / her knee was bad).

C Whereas

This word is used to connect a fact or opinion about a person, place or thing, with something different about another person, place or thing (you can also use whilst). In other words, the second fact is a contrast with the first, but not always a surprise (as in B above).
John is very careful whereas Christopher makes lots of mistakes.
The south is hot and dry whereas the north gets quite a lot of rain.

D However

You can use however to contrast two ideas in two sentences, and say that the second sentence is surprising after the first (as in B); and you can use however or on the other hand to make a contrast between different people/places or things (as in C above):
I don’t agree with a lot of his methods. However, he is a good teacher.
We didn’t like the hotel at all. However, we still enjoyed ourselves.
Marcel thought it was a great film. Joe, however / on the other hand, thought it was stupid.
Most big cats, such as tigers and leopards, are very solitary creatures. Lions, however / on the other hand, spend much of their time in groups.
### Exercises

**34.1** Cross out the incorrect answers. Both answers may be correct.

1. Although / in spite of we left late, we still got there in time.
2. It was a fantastic evening although / in spite of the terrible food.
3. We have decided to go in spite of / despite the cost of the tickets.
4. They enjoyed the course even though / whereas it was very difficult.
5. I love the sea furthermore / whereas most of my friends prefer the mountains.
6. We found a lovely villa near the lake that we can rent. In addition / Moreover it has its own swimming pool, and we have free use of a car provided by the owners.
7. We both told John the car was too expensive. However / On the other hand, he still decided to buy it.
8. Most people we met tried to help us. They were very friendly too / as well.
9. During the week the town centre is very busy. At the weekend on the other hand / whereas, it is very quiet and almost empty.
10. My uncle is the owner of the factory opposite. He also / however runs the restaurant next door and the car hire company down the road.

**34.2** Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He went to school today</td>
<td>even though</td>
<td>the pay isn’t very good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He always did his best at school</td>
<td>in spite of</td>
<td>he’s the most experienced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s got the right qualifications.</td>
<td>However</td>
<td>the help I gave him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He didn’t pass the exam</td>
<td>whereas</td>
<td>he didn’t feel very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He decided to take the job.</td>
<td>What’s more</td>
<td>most of his schoolfriends were very lazy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**34.3** Fill the gaps with a suitable link word or phrase.

1. .................................. taking a map, they still got lost.
2. It took me two hours to do it .................................. the others finished in less than an hour.
3. The hotel has a very good reputation. ............................, it is one of the cheapest in the area.
4. She managed to get there .................................. she had a broken ankle.
5. It’s not the best dictionary you can buy; ............................, it’s better than nothing.
6. She’s younger than the others in the group, and she’s better than most of them ..................

**34.4** Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1. I was able to follow what she was saying even though ..................................
2. I was able to follow what she was saying whereas ..................................
3. We enjoyed the holiday in spite of ..................................
4. If you buy a season ticket, you can go as often as you like. Furthermore, ..................................
5. The exam was very difficult. However, ..................................
6. Although it was a very long film, ..................................

**34.5** Answer the questions and test yourself on these different link words and phrases.

1. Write down all the link words and phrases from the opposite page that you can remember.
2. Organise them into groups according to their meaning.
3. Write your own examples for each one and keep them on one page in your notebook. In future, you can add more examples as you meet them.
3 5  Similarities, differences and conditions

A  Similarities

These are ways of saying that two or more things are similar, or have something the same. Peter is similar to (= like) his brother in many ways. Peter and his brother are very similar. Peter and his brother are quite alike. Maria and Rebecca both passed their exams. (= Maria passed and Rebecca passed) But neither wants to go to university. (= Maria doesn’t want to go and Rebecca doesn’t want to go either) The two boys have a lot in common. (= they have many things e.g. hobbies, interests, beliefs, that are the same or very similar) See also section B.

B  Differences

These are ways of saying that two or more things are different. His early films are different from his later ones. Paula is quite unlike (= very different from) her sister. They have nothing in common. (= they have no interests or beliefs that are the same)

C  Using ‘compare’

We want to compare the prices of all the televisions before we decide which one to buy. They made a comparison of average salaries in different parts of the country. Our new flat is very big compared with/to our old one. (= if you compare it with the other) If you compare this one with the others, I’m sure you’ll see a difference.

D  Exceptions

When we make a general statement about things or people and then say that one thing or person is not included or is different from the others, we use these words and phrases:

It snowed everywhere except on the west coast. The two girls are very similar except that Louise has slightly longer hair. The museum is open every day except (for) / apart from Sunday(s). Everyone heard the fire alarm except (for) / apart from the two boys in room 7.

Note: Except can be followed by different words (nouns, prepositions, etc.), but except for and apart from are followed by nouns or noun phrases.

E  Conditions

Here are some words/phrases which introduce or connect conditions. Like ‘if’, they are used with certain tenses, and the rules are quite difficult. For the moment, notice the tenses underlined in the examples, and use them in this way until you meet other examples. We will be late unless we hurry. (= we’ll be late if we don’t hurry) Unless the weather improves (= if the weather doesn’t improve), we won’t be able to go. I must go now otherwise (= because if I don’t) I’ll miss the last bus. You can borrow it as long as (= on condition that) you bring it back by Thursday.

Note: The meaning is very similar to if here, but the use of as long as shows that the condition is very important to the speaker.

Take your umbrella with you in case it rains. (= because of the possibility it may rain later) I brought food in case we get hungry. (= because of the possibility we may be hungry later)
**Exercises**

35.1 Read the information, then complete the sentences using the words/phrases from A and B.

MICHEL ... PHILIPPE ... PAUL ...

is 21 and lives with his parents. is 22 and lives alone. He is 18 and lives with his parents. He is a trainee in a bank, but one day would like to be the manager. He is a very good footballer.

He has worked in a shop. He is but lazy, and spends most of his time at parties. He has no plans for the future.

He is hard-working and very good at sport. He would like to become the manager of a sports shop.

1 Michel and Paul are very

2 Philippe is quite the other two.

3 Paul and Michel have

4 Paul and Philippe have almost nothing

5 Paul and Michel both

6 Neither of them

35.2 Rewrite these sentences. You must start with the words you are given and use the words in brackets. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.

*Example:* He's like the others.

He's ...y*iT?j. far (similar)

1 Martin is quite unlike his brother.

Martin is very (different)

2 When you see the houses, you realise that the flats are very good value.

The flats are very good value (compare)

3 In her class, Carla was the only one who didn't pass the exam.

Everyone (except)

4 The two boys have completely different interests.

The two boys have (common)

5 You don't have to wear a tie except for Saturday(s).

You don't have to wear a tie (apart)

35.3 Fill the gaps with the correct link word or phrase from E opposite.

1 You must write these words down you may forget them.

I've made extra food for the party more people come than we expect.

3 I can meet you for dinner on Friday evening I have to work late at the office.

4 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog she takes it for a walk every day.

35.4 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

1 I want to finish this report today otherwise I'll

2 You can't get in that disco unless you

3 You can borrow the money as long as you

4 I've cleaned the spare room and made the bed in case

5 I'm not going to work on Saturday unless

6 I'm going to take my cheque book with me in case

35.5 How many different sentences can you write beginning with these words?

Compared with Britain, my country
36 Reason, purpose and result

A Reason

I went home early because/as/since I was feeling a bit tired.

Note: With as or since, the reason (in this example ‘feeling tired’) is often known to the listener or reader, so it is less important. It is also common to put as/since at the beginning of the sentence: ‘As/since I was feeling tired, I went home early’. In spoken English, many native speakers would use so after the reason: I was feeling a bit tired, so I went home early. We can also use because of, but with a different construction. Compare:

We always go there because the weather is absolutely wonderful. (because + noun + verb)
We always go there because of the wonderful weather. (because of + (adjective) + noun)

Due to and owing to have the same meaning as because of, but they are more formal, and are often used in sentences which explain the reason for a problem:

The plane was late due to bad weather. (due to is often used after the verb ‘to be’)
Due to / Owing to the power cut last night, I missed the late film on TV.

B ‘Cause’ and ‘result’ verbs

There are some verbs which we can use in similar ways to the words above:

Police think the bus caused the accident. (= was responsible for the accident)
The extra investment should lead to more jobs. (= result in more jobs)

‘Cause’ and ‘result’ verbs sometimes appear together in this way:

Police think that a cigarette caused the fire which resulted in the destruction of the building.

C Purpose

A purpose is an intention, an aim or a reason for doing something:

The purpose of buying this book was to improve my English.

But we often introduce a purpose using so (that):

I bought this book so (that) I can improve my English.
They went home early so (that) they could watch the match on television.
We moved house so (that) we could send our children to this school.

Note: In spoken English, people often just say so (without that). It is also very common (as in the examples) to use a modal verb, e.g. can or could, after so that.

D Result

These words introduce a result:

I left the ticket at home, so I’m afraid I had to buy another one.
I forgot to send the letters. Consequently, some people didn’t know about the meeting.
She was extremely hard-working and therefore deserved the promotion.
Both the manager and his assistant were ill. As a result, there was no-one to take decisions.

Note: So is the most common, and usually links ideas in a single sentence. As a result and consequently are more formal, and usually connect ideas in two separate sentences (as in the examples). Therefore (also more formal), can be used in a single sentence (as in the example), but may also connect two sentences.
Exercises

36.1 Combine the two sentences into one sentence using so, so that, because, as, or since. More than one answer is possible in some sentences.
1 I didn’t phone you. It was very late.
2 I turned up the radio in the lounge. I could hear it in the kitchen.
3 The restaurant was full. We went to the bar next door.
4 I stayed at home. I was expecting a phone call.
5 It’s a very large city. You have to use public transport a lot.
6 I learned to drive. My mother didn’t have to take me to the riding school every week.

36.2 Transform these sentences using because of. Make any changes that are necessary.
Example: He couldn’t play because he had an injured shoulder.
He couldn’t play because of his injured shoulder.
1 She got the job because her qualifications are excellent.
2 The weather was terrible, so we couldn’t eat outside.
3 She had to stay at home because she has a broken ankle.
4 The light was very bad, so the referee had to stop the game.
5 The flowers died because it was so dry.
6 The traffic was very heavy. I was half an hour late.

36.3 Read this memo from a manager to the staff. Fill the gaps with suitable words or phrases.

To: All staff
From: The Manager
Date: 9.8.96
Subject: Temporary roadworks

From next Monday (and continuing throughout the week), there will be roadworks on all major approach roads to the factory. (1) ______ this will (2) ______ considerable delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning (3) ______ everyone arrives on time.
I have been told that these roadworks could also (4) ______ severe traffic congestion. (5) ______ it may be advisable to leave your cars at home and use public transport instead.
Thank you for your cooperation in this matter.
DP

36.4 These sentences are all about learning English. Complete them in a logical way.
1 I want to improve my English because ________________________________
2 I bought myself a walkman so that I ________________________________
3 I study English at the weekend as ________________________________
4 I always write words down in my notebook so that ________________________________
5 I don’t get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently, ________________________________
6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, ________________________________
7 If he could speak almost perfect English it could lead to ________________________________
8 Some people find English difficult because of ________________________________
A Physical features

- continents: e.g. Asia, Europe
- countries: e.g. China, Brazil
- islands: e.g. Sicily, Corsica, Hong Kong
- group of islands: e.g. The Bahamas, The Balearics
- oceans: e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Pacific Ocean
- seas: e.g. The Red Sea, The Dead Sea
- lakes: e.g. Lake Tanganyika, Lake Titikaka
- rivers: e.g. The Nile, The Mississippi
- falls: e.g. Niagara Falls, The Iguacu Falls
- mountains: e.g. Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
- mountain ranges: e.g. The Andes, The Alps
- jungles: e.g. The Amazon (also called The Amazon rainforest)
- forests: e.g. The Black Forest
- deserts: e.g. The Sahara, The Gobi

Note: Sometimes you need the definite article 'the', e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Alps; sometimes no article is used, e.g. Mount Everest and Lake Titikaka. Compare this with your own language.

B Natural disasters

A disaster is when something terrible happens, which often results in death, destruction and suffering.
37.1 Complete these sentences, as in the example.

*Example:* The Nile is ........... a river..........

1. The Atlantic is ..........................................
2. The Alps are ..........................................
3. Greece is .............................................
4. The Sahara is .........................................
5. The Amazon is .........................................
6. The Mediterranean is .................................
7. The Bahamas is ........................................
8. Africa is ................................................
9. Crete and Corsica are ..............................
10. Everest is the highest ................................... in the world.
11. Michigan and Eyrie are two of the Great ............... 
12. The ‘Great Bear’ is a group of ......................

37.2 Fill the gaps in the text with the if necessary.

My journey took me across ........... Atlantic Ocean from ........... Europe to ........... South America. I travelled through ........... Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of ........... Brazil as far as ........... Iguacu Falls. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round ........... Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed ........... Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to ........... Jamaica in ........... West Indies.

37.3 What disaster is being described in each of these sentences?

1. It lifted a car about ten feet off the ground, and then we saw it disappear down the street.
2. It was about two metres deep and we watched as most of our furniture just floated away.
3. The grass turned yellow and most of the crops died.
4. The walls began to move visibly, and large cracks opened up in the ground.
5. We could see the lava slowly advancing towards the town just ten miles away.

37.4 Can you name everything marked on this map? Write your answers next to the symbols.
Weather conditions

Look at this list of common weather words. Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding ‘-y’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>wind</td>
<td>windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud</td>
<td>cloudy</td>
<td>ice</td>
<td>ic(e)y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog</td>
<td>foggy</td>
<td>shower</td>
<td>showery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>humidity</td>
<td>humid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When it rains for a short period of time, we call it a shower, e.g. We had several showers yesterday afternoon.

When it is raining a lot we often say it’s pouring or it’s pouring with rain. This phrase is much more common than ‘it’s raining cats and dogs’, which many students seem to learn.

Temperature

boiling hot warm not very warm cold freezing
(= very hot) (also chilly) (= very cold)

People round the world have different ideas about temperature:
5°C (five degrees centigrade) is freezing for many Brazilians.
-10°C (minus ten degrees or ten degrees below zero) is very cold but quite normal in the mountains in Switzerland during the winter when it usually snows a lot.
30-35°C is boiling for England and very unusual, but it is very common in parts of Spain during the summer.

Wind

The first word here is very gentle; the last is more than 100 km per hour and can be very dangerous.
a breeze a wind a strong wind a gale a hurricane

It was a hot day but there was a lovely breeze.
The wind blew my hat off.
The hurricane in Florida destroyed trees and buildings.

Thunderstorms

A spell (= period) of very hot weather often ends with a thunderstorm. First it becomes very humid (= hot and wet), then you get thunder and lightning, and finally, very heavy rain (= it pours with rain). Afterwards, it is usually cooler and it feels fresher.
Exercises

38.1 Identify the weather conditions in these pictures.

38.2 True or false? If a sentence is false, write a true sentence about the weather conditions in the sentence.

1 It often pours with rain in the desert.
2 It gets quite chilly in the desert in the evening.
3 Thunder makes a noise.
4 Lightning can kill people.
5 A shower is a gentle breeze.
6 A spell of hot weather may end in a thunderstorm.
7 If it is humid, the air will be very dry.
8 Below zero, water turns to ice.
9 Heavy rain means that it is pouring with rain.
10 When it’s foggy you need sunglasses.

38.3 Complete these scales.

— wind — strong wind — — hurricane

— hot — warm — not very warm — cold —

38.4 Complete this text with suitable words.

The single greatest influence on Japanese weather is the wind. During the summer it (1)............. from the Pacific, causing (2)............. and humid weather, but in winter, the north-westerly (3)............. from Siberia are very cold and it (4)............. heavily on the mountains of the north west. The south-eastern parts receive cold dry air. Between June and mid July, there is a (9)............. of wet weather when the rice fields get the water vital for growth. After that, there is less (9)............. rain, but the air is still (7)............. Autumn, however, is drier, and usually very pleasant.

Write a paragraph about the weather in your own country, or a specific part of your country, e.g. your own region. Try to use as many words as possible from the opposite page.
Using the land

**Ground and soil**

When we walk, our feet are on the **ground** (= the general word for the surface of the earth). For the top part of the ground where grass and flowers grow, we use the word **soil**.

There were no seats in the park, so we had to sit on the **ground**. The **ground** is very hard because it hasn’t rained for weeks. Plants don’t grow very well here because the **soil** is too dry.

**Above the ground**

Some land is used for parks and gardens where we often **grow** trees and **plants** (= living things with **roots** and **leaves**, smaller than trees which grow in the soil). First, you **plant** the tree or plant (= put the tree or plant in the ground), then you must **water** it (= give it water).

Land in the country is often used for **agriculture/farming**. Some farms concentrate on dairy **produce** such as milk, butter and cheese. Other farms **keep** animals which are **slaughtered** (= killed) and **sold** for their meat, e.g. cows and lambs. Some farms use the land to **grow** fruit, e.g. apples and pears; vegetables, e.g. potatoes and carrots; and cereals, e.g. wheat, maize and barley. When they are ready, farmers **pick** the **fruit** and **harvest** the other crops (= take the other crops from the ground). This period is called the **harvest**. We use the word **crop(s)** as a general word to describe all the things that are grown to be eaten:

In parts of Africa the **crops** failed because of the **drought** (= long period without rain). We had a wonderful **crop** of barley last year.

**Below the ground**

One of the main activities below the ground is **mining**. This is the process of **extracting** (fml) (= removing or taking out) different materials, e.g. **coal** or **gold**, from below the **ground**. We call the place a mine, e.g. a coal mine or gold mine.

These are some of the **metals** we take out of the ground:

- **gold**: a valuable yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
- **silver**: a valuable whitish metal used to make coins and jewellery
- **iron**: usually takes the form of a hard dark-grey metal, and is used in building and to make tools. It is also used to make steel
- **tin**: a softer metal often used to cover other metals
- **copper**: a soft reddish metal; it permits heat and electricity to pass through it easily
Exercises

39.1 Which nouns on the right often follow the verbs on the left? (There may be more than one noun for several of the verbs.)
1 plant coal
2 water cows
3 pick wheat
4 extract apples
5 grow plants
6 slaughter trees

39.2 Are these statements true or false? If false, correct them.
1 Plants need roots.
2 Soil is the top part of the ground.
3 Drought is a long period of rain.
4 If you extract something, you remove it.
5 The harvest is the period when we plant the crops.
6 Iron is used to make silver.

39.3 Complete the descriptions of these objects with a suitable ‘metal’.

1 a ........... can
2 a ........... spoon
3 a knife with a ........... blade
4 a frying pan with ........... base
5 a ........... ring
6 these ........... bars are very strong

39.4 Complete these sentences with the correct ‘general’ word. Look at the example first.
Example: Apples, oranges and bananas are all types of .............. fruit
1 Potatoes, beans and carrots are types of ..............
2 Silver, tin and copper are types of ..............
3 Milk, butter and cheese are all .............. products.
4 .............. is the general word for wheat, maize, barley, etc.
5 We use the word .............. as a general word for plants which are grown to be eaten.

39.5 Answer these questions about your own country.
1 Which of these are the most important to your economy: agriculture, mining or fishing?
2 Are any precious (= valuable e.g. gold or silver) metals found in your country?
3 What are some of the main crops grown in your country?
Animals and insects

Pets and farm animals

Many people keep pets (= domestic animals that live with people) in Britain. The most common are dogs and cats, but children in particular sometimes keep mice (singular = a mouse) and rabbits.

Farm animals include: sheep, pigs, cows, horses, chickens and goats.

Note: The word ‘sheep’ is the singular and plural form i.e. a sheep or some sheep. A young sheep is called a lamb.

Wild animals

In a zoo or in the wild, you will find these wild animals.

Common insects

Here are some common insects.

In the water, in the air, and on the ground

Here are some creatures (= living things, e.g. animals, birds, fish) that swim, fly, or move along the ground.
Exercises

40.1 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.

*Examples:* whale water (different) cat camel (same)

1 lion tiger 6 monkey mosquito
2 leopard mosquito 7 camel snake
3 bear eagle 8 leopard shark
4 gorilla giraffe 9 dog wasp
5 spider wild 10 mouse cow

40.2 Divide these words into three groups and give each one a title.

monkey horse goat fly lion cow elephant pig mosquito
butterfly tiger wasp sheep camel ant leopard bear chicken

40.3 Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

1 .................. can fly at a great height.
2 .................. can swim very long distances.
3 .................. can understand lots of human commands.
4 .................. can run very fast.
5 .................. can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
6 .................. can be 30 metres in length.
7 .................. can eat fruit from tall trees.
8 .................. change their skin several times a year.
9 .................. can pick things up with their trunk.
10 .................. provide us with wool.

40.4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

1 They’ve got lots of pets: two dogs, four cats, and a ..................
2 Their farm animals include cows, sheep and ..................
3 The children love to see the ‘big cats’ at the zoo such as lions, tigers and ..................
4 I hate most insects, but particularly mosquitoes and ..................
5 We saw some really large animals at the Safari Park: elephants, giraffes and ..................

40.5 Can you match these creatures with their maximum speeds?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>creature</th>
<th>maximum speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lion</td>
<td>64 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spider</td>
<td>0.05 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>80 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>56 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pig</td>
<td>40 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snail</td>
<td>18 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shark</td>
<td>270 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golden eagle</td>
<td>1.88 kph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Who speaks what where?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>British</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Mandarin (also Cantonese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>American</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi Arabian</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
<td>Swiss-German, French, Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Egyptian</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Israeli</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinian</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The people

When you are talking about people in general from a particular country, there are some nationalities that you can make plural with an ‘s’, but others can only be formed with the definite article (and no plural ‘s’):

- Brazilians
- Germans
- (The) Italians are (usually very ...)
- Russians
- Israelis
- The British
- The French
- The Swiss are (usually very ...)
- The Dutch
- The Japanese

**Note:**
- With both groups you can also use the word ‘people’: British people, German people, etc.
- When you talk about one person from these countries, you need to add woman/man/person to the group on the right: a Brazilian but a Japanese person; a German but a Swiss person, etc.
Exercises

41.1 Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.
1 Write down three countries where the first language is English.
2 What language is spoken in Brazil?
3 What are people from Holland called?
4 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
5 What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
6 What nationality are people from Sweden?
7 What language is spoken in Mexico?
8 What are people from Egypt called?
9 What is the first language in Israel?
10 Where do people speak Mandarin?

41.2 Mark the main stress on the words in the box, and practise saying them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japan</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>Brazilian</th>
<th>Egyptian</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What do you notice about the stress on words ending -ia, -ian, and -ese?

41.3 Complete these sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

Examples: I've worked a lot with Germans.
I've spent a lot of time with the French.
1 We do a lot of business with ......................
2 ...................... are usually hard-working.
3 I have always found ...................... very friendly.
4 People often say that ...................... are reserved.
5 ...................... are very organised.
6 I met a lot of ...................... on my trip to Athens.

41.4 Complete these sentences.
1 Bangkok is the capital of ...................... 6 Riyadh is the capital of ......................
2 Buenos Aires is the capital of ...................... 7 Athens is the capital of ......................
3 Ankara is the capital of ...................... 8 Tel Aviv is the capital of ......................
4 Seoul is the capital of ...................... 9 Stockholm is the capital of ......................
5 Cairo is the capital of ...................... 10 Lisbon is the capital of ......................

41.5 Can you identify these languages?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Zdruhenkyne</th>
<th>4 今日は</th>
<th>7 goede dag</th>
<th>10 Bonjour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 한녕하세요</td>
<td>5 Fela eou</td>
<td>8 Hola</td>
<td>11 Hej</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Gao</td>
<td>6 你好</td>
<td>9 Grüezi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

41.6 Have you met someone from each of the countries on the opposite page? Go through the list and tick the ones you have.
The body and what it does

A Parts of the body
Learn the parts of the body that you don’t already know.

- forehead
- eyebrows
- cheek
- lips
- chin
- neck
- shoulders
- elbow
- waist
- bottom
- thigh
- ankle
- toes
- bust (chest for men)
- hips
- wrist
- hand
- thumb
- fingers
- knee
- foot
- heel

B Physical actions
You can breathe through your nose or your mouth. Most people breathe about 12–15 times a minute.
People smile when they’re happy, or to be polite; they laugh when people say something funny; they may cry when they’re sad; they yawn when they’re tired, or bored.
Many people nod their head to mean ‘yes’, and shake their head when they mean ‘no’.
When you pick up something heavy, you must bend your knees and keep your back straight.

C Common expressions
- shake hands
- fold your arms
- blow your nose
- comb your hair
- bite your nails
Exercises

42.1 How much of the picture can you label without looking at the page opposite?

42.2 Match the verbs on the left with a suitable part of the body on the right to form common expressions. Use each verb and noun once only.

1 blow       your knees
2 shake      your nose
3 comb       your nails
4 fold       your head
5 bend       your arms
6 nod        your hair
7 bite       hands

42.3 What do these actions often mean? (There may be lots of possible answers.)

1 People often smile when .................................................................
2 They often breathe quickly after ....................................................
3 They laugh when ...........................................................................
4 They may bite their nails ...............................................................
5 They blow their nose ....................................................................
6 They shake their head ..................................................................
7 And nod their head ......................................................................
8 They cry ......................................................................................
9 They yawn when ...........................................................................

42.4 There are fourteen words describing parts of the body, either across or down, in this word square. Can you find them?

CEL BOWA
HTIAE N
IOPCYAM
NECKEIH
IHANKLE
KCHESTE
CHEEKAL

English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate) 89
Describing people's appearance

General

Positive: beautiful is generally used to describe women; handsome is used to describe men; good-looking is used for both; pretty is another positive word to describe a woman (often a girl) meaning 'attractive and nice to look at'.

Negative: ugly is the most negative word to describe someone; plain is more polite.

Height and build

tall and slim  medium height and build  short and fat  medium height and very muscular

Note: Another word for slim is thin, but slim has a more positive meaning, e.g. John is lovely and slim, but his brother is terribly thin. Skinny also has the same meaning but is very negative. It is not very polite to say someone is fat; overweight is more neutral and polite.

Hair

straight  wavy  curly  fair  blond(e)  light brown  dark  dark brown  black

Special features

The man on the left has got very pale skin (= white skin). He also has broad shoulders, with a small scar at the top of his left arm. The other man has dark skin. He also has a beard and moustache and quite a hairy chest and a tattoo.

Asking questions about a person's appearance

Q: What does she look like?  A: She's quite tall, with short fair hair.
Q: How tall is she?  A: About 1 metre 65.
Q: How much does she weigh?  A: I don't know and it may be rude to ask. Probably about 45 kilos.
Exercises

43.1 Complete these sentences in a suitable way. (More than one answer may be possible.)

1. She's got blonde ..........................
2. He's got very pale ..........................
3. They've both got curly ..........................
4. I would say he was medium ..........................
5. Her brother has got very broad ..........................
6. She doesn't like men with hairy ..........................
7. Last time I saw him he had grown a ..........................
8. He's got very muscular ..........................
9. Both men were very good-..........................
10. All of them have got dark ..........................

43.2 Replace the underlined word in each sentence with a word which is either more suitable or more polite.

1. He told me he met a handsome girl in the disco last night.
2. She's beautiful but her younger sister is really quite ugly.
3. I think Peter is getting a bit fat, don't you?
4. Most people want to stay slim, but not as skinny as that girl over there.
5. I think she's hoping she'll meet a few beautiful men at the tennis club.

43.3 You want to know about the following:
- someone's general appearance
- their height
- their weight

What questions do you need to ask? Complete these questions.

What ................................. ?
How ................................. ?
How much ................................. ?

Now answer these questions.

1. How tall are you?
2. How would you describe your build?
3. How much do you weigh?
4. What kind of hair have you got?
5. What colour is it?
6. Would you like it to be different? If so, what would you like?
7. Do you think you have any special features?
8. Are there any special features you would like to have?
9. Do you like beards?
10. Can you think of a famous woman you would describe as beautiful, and a famous man you would describe as good-looking?

If possible, ask another person these questions.
**44 Describing character**

**A Opposites**

Many positive words describing character have clear opposites with a negative meaning.

*Positive*  
- warm and friendly  
- kind  
- generous (= happy to give/share)  
- optimistic (= thinks positively)  
- cheerful (= happy and smiling)  
- relaxed and easy-going  
- strong  
- sensitive  
- honest (= always tells the truth)

*Negative*  
- cold and unfriendly  
- unkind  
- mean (= never gives to others)  
- pessimistic (= thinks negatively)  
- miserable (= always seems unhappy)  
- tense (= nervous; worries a lot; not calm)  
- weak  
- insensitive (= does not think about others’ feelings)  
- dishonest

Jane is very tense at the moment because of her exams, but she’s usually quite relaxed and easy-going about most things.

I think the weather influences me a lot: when it’s sunny I feel more cheerful and optimistic, but when it’s cold and raining I get very miserable.

He seemed a bit unfriendly at first, but now I’ve got to know him I realise he’s very warm and kind.

The shop assistant told me that the dress I tried on looked better on people younger than me. I thought that was very insensitive of her, but at least she was being honest, I suppose.

**B Character in action**

People often talk about qualities of character that you may need in a work situation. Again, some of these words come in pairs of opposites: one positive and one negative.

*Positive*  
- hard-working  
- punctual (= always on time)  
- reliable  
- clever, bright *(infml)*  
- flexible  
- ambitious

*Negative*  
- lazy (= never does any work)  
- not very punctual; always late  
- unreliable (= you cannot trust / depend on someone like this)  
- stupid, thick *(infml)*  
- inflexible (= a very fixed way of thinking; unable to change)  
- unambitious (= no desire to be successful and get a better job)

Some pairs of opposites do not have a particularly positive or negative meaning:

He is very shy when you first meet him because he finds it difficult to talk to people and make conversation; but when he knows people quite well he’s much more self-confident.

People often say the British are very reserved (= do not show their feelings), but when you get to know them they can be very emotional like anyone else.

**C Using nouns**

Some important qualities are expressed through nouns.

One of her great qualities is that she uses her initiative. (= she can think for herself and take the necessary action; she does not need to wait for orders all the time)

That boy has got no common sense (= he does stupid things and doesn’t think what he is doing). His sister, on the other hand, is very sensible. (= has lots of common sense)
Exercises

44.1 Organise these words into pairs of opposites and put them in the columns below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>clever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tense</td>
<td>cheerful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>generous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>unpleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>stupid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard-working</td>
<td>miserable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44.2 What prefix forms the opposite of each of these words? (You need three different prefixes.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kind</th>
<th>flexible</th>
<th>friendly</th>
<th>honest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reliable</td>
<td>sensitive</td>
<td>ambitious</td>
<td>pleasant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44.3 How would you describe the person in each of these descriptions?

1. He never bought me a drink all the time we were together.
2. I have to tell her what to do every minute of the working day. She wouldn’t even open a window without someone’s permission.
3. He often promises to do things but half the time he forgets.
4. She’s always here on time.
5. I don’t think he’s done any work since he’s been here.
6. She finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
7. He could work in any of the departments, and it doesn’t matter to him if he’s on his own or part of a team.
8. One of the great things about her is that she is so aware of what other people think or feel.
9. Bob, on the other hand, is the complete opposite. He is always making people angry or upset because he just doesn’t consider their feelings.
10. The other thing about Bob is that he really wants to get the supervisor’s job and then become boss for the whole department.

44.4 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives? Use a dictionary to help you.

*Example:* kind *kindness*

punctual | optimistic | reliable | lazy
confident | generous | ambitious | stupid
sensitive | strong | flexible | shy

44.5 Choose three words from the opposite page which describe you. Is there one quality you do not have but would like to have? What, in your opinion, is the worst quality described on the opposite page? If possible, compare your answers with a friend.
Human feelings and actions

Feelings

Noun | Adjective(s)
--- | ---
love (≠ hate) | happy (≠ sad)
happiness (≠ sadness) | happy (≠ sad)
ger | angry
fear | afraid (of) / frightened (of)
pride | proud (of)
jealousy | jealous (of)
embarrassment | embarrassed/embarrassing (see Unit 30)

Note:
- Pride has different meanings, but the most common is the feeling of satisfaction you have because you (or people you are connected with) have done something well. He was very proud when his wife became the first President of the organisation.
- Jealousy is a feeling of anger and unhappiness you may have if (a) someone you love shows a lot of interest in others, or (b) if someone has something you want / don't have.
  a) My boyfriend gets very jealous when I talk to other boys.
  b) He's jealous of his brother because his brother is more intelligent and makes more money.
- A common adjective is upset, which means unhappy, sad, and even angry, because something unpleasant has happened, e.g. He was very upset when we didn't invite him.

Ways of ...

Ways of speaking
- whisper (v, n) (= speak very quietly)
- shout (v, n) (= speak in a very loud voice)

Ways of looking
- stare (v, n) (= look at someone/something in a fixed way for a long time)
- glance (at) (v, n) (= look at someone or something very quickly)

Ways of walking
- stroll (v, n) (= walk in a slow casual way)
- march (v, n) (= walk quickly and with a clear purpose/reason)

Things we do with our hands

- clap
- knock (on a door) (v, n)
- wave (goodbye)
- point (at sth./sb.)
- press (a button)
- punch someone
Exercises

45.1 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives?
angry sad happy proud jealous embarrassed

45.2 Find the logical ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.
1 He was very proud when a someone stole his money.
2 He was very jealous when b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.
3 He was very embarrassed when c he heard that his aunt had died.
4 He was very angry when d he saw those big dogs running towards him.
5 He was very sad when e he bought her a birthday present on the wrong day.
6 He was very frightened when f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked.

45.3 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.
1 Would you feel embarrassed or upset (or both) if you forgot your mother’s birthday or your father’s birthday?
2 Do you ever feel frightened in a car (as a passenger) because you are going very fast?
3 Do you get angry when other people want you to do things that you don’t want to do?
4 If you made a stupid mistake in English, would you feel embarrassed?
5 Is there any one thing that you are very proud of?
6 Are there any common situations where you sometimes feel embarrassed?

45.4 What are these people doing? Describe their actions using words from the opposite page.

45.5 Replace the underlined words with a single verb that has the same meaning.
1 She stopped working and looked quickly at the clock.
2 As we were in the library, he spoke very quietly in my ear.
3 We walked casually along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
4 He made us all walk quickly up the hill.
5 The man kept looking at Susan, but she didn’t seem to notice.
6 Jim doesn’t know what happened, except that the man hit him hard on the side of his face.
46 Family and friends

A Relatives (= members of your family)

These are the most important relatives (also called relations):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Male</th>
<th>Female</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Your parents' parents</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your parents' brother and sister</td>
<td>uncle(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your aunt's uncle's children</td>
<td>cousin(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The father and mother of the person you marry</td>
<td>father-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The brother and sister of the person you marry</td>
<td>brother-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your brother's sister's children</td>
<td>nephew(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The person you marry dies, so you are a ...</td>
<td>widower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your mother or father remarries, so you have a ...</td>
<td>step-father</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Family background (= family history)

My grandfather was a market gardener in Ireland. He grew flowers, fruit and vegetables, and sold them in the market every day. He worked hard all his life, and when he died, his son (now my uncle) and daughter (my mother) inherited a large house and garden (= received this house and garden from my grandfather when he died). They carried on the business together until my mother met my father. They got married, moved to England, and I was born two years later. They didn’t have any more children, so I am an only child.

C Family names

When you are born, your family gives you a first name, e.g. James, Kate, Sarah and Alex are common first names in Britain. Your family name (also called your surname) is the one that all the family share e.g. Smith, Brown, Jones, and O’Neill are common surnames in Britain. Some parents give their children a middle name (like a first name), but you do not usually say this name. Your full name is all the names you have, e.g. Sarah Jane Smith.

D Changing times

Society changes and so do families. In some places, people may decide to live together but do not get married. They are not husband and wife, but call each other their partner. There are also many families in some parts of the world where the child or children live(s) with just their mother or father; these are sometimes called single-parent families.

E Friends

We can use a number of adjectives before friend:

- an old friend (= someone you have known for a long time)
- a close friend (= a good friend; someone you like and trust)
- your best friend (= the one friend you feel closest to)

We use the word colleagues to describe the people we work with.

F Ex-

We use this for a husband/wife/boyfriend/girlfriend we had in the past but do not have now:
The children stay with my ex-husband at the weekend.
I saw an ex-girlfriend of mine at the disco last night.
Exercises

46.1 Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.

Albert & Mary Dodds

John = Susan  Jill = Paul  Barry = Sheila

(died 1995)

Eve  Ana  Timothy  Tom

1 John is Jill's ........................................
2 Timothy is Jill's ..................................
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's ......................
4 Eve is Sheila's ....................................
5 Albert Dodds is Tom's ............................
6 Barry is Eve's ....................................
7 Susan is Timothy's ...............................
8 As Paul died in 1995, Jill is a ..................
9 Tom is Mary's .....................................
10 The only two people who are not related are .................................. and ..................................

46.2 Answer these questions about yourself and your country.

1 What’s your first name?
2 What’s your surname?
3 Is that a common name in your country?
4 Do you have a middle name?
5 Are you an only child?
6 Who is your oldest friend?
7 Do you work? If so, how many of your work colleagues are also your friends?
8 Do you have any ex-boyfriends or ex-girlfriends who speak English very well?
9 Are single-parent families becoming more common in your country?
10 In your country, do more and more people live together without getting married?

46.3 Draw your own family tree. Are there any relationships you cannot describe in English? Can you also write a short summary of your family background (as in B on the opposite page)?
Ages and stages

**A Growing up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Stage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–1 approximately</td>
<td>a baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>a toddler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–12 approximately</td>
<td>a child – this period is your childhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13–17 approximately</td>
<td>a teenager (14 = early teens)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18+</td>
<td>an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–30</td>
<td>in your twenties (24–26 = mid twenties)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–40</td>
<td>in your thirties (38 = late thirties)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40+</td>
<td>people are middle-aged; in middle age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 or 65</td>
<td>retirement (= when people stop work; they are retired)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75+</td>
<td>old age (you can also use elderly)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note*: For boys, the period between 14–17 approximately (slightly younger for girls) is called adolescence, i.e. you are an adolescent. In law you are an adult at the age of 18, but many people think of you as an adult when you leave school.

**B Childhood and adolescence**

Sam (on the right) was born in Scotland but when he was two, his father got a new job in London and he grew up in the south of England. He went to university at 18 where he ...

**C Romance**

... where he met Anthea. He went out with her (= she was his girlfriend; he was her boyfriend) for three years, but towards the end they had lots of rows (= arguments) and they split up (= broke up / separated). In his mid twenties ...

**D Marriage**

... in his mid twenties he met Maureen. They fell in love and got married within six months. A year later she got pregnant and they had their first child, a boy. As you can see, she is now expecting their second child (to be pregnant = to be expecting a baby). But sadly Sam met another woman and he left Maureen two months ago to live with the other woman.
Exercises

47.1 What stage of life are these people at?
1  Paul isn’t 2 yet, so he’s still a .............................................
2  Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but stopped work two years ago, so he is now .............................................
3  Susan is 25, so she is in her .............................................
4  Caroline is 50 this year so she is now in her .............................................
5  Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in .............................................
6  Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite .............................................
7  Jason was born six weeks ago, so he’s .............................................
8  Leyla is 13 this year, so she’ll soon be a .............................................
9  Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes .............................................
10 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through .............................................

47.2 Are these sentences true or false about the people on the opposite page? If the sentences are false, write the correct answer below. Try to answer the questions first without looking at the opposite page.
1  Sam was born in Scotland.
2  He grew up in the south of Ireland.
3  He went out with Anthea for two years.
4  They split up because Sam went to live in Japan.
5  Sam fell in love with Maureen.
6  They had a baby a year after they got married.
7  Maureen is now expecting her third child.
8  Maureen left Sam.

47.3 Find the logical ending for each of the sentence beginnings on the left and construct Rebecca’s life.
1  Rebecca was born .............................................
2  She grew up .............................................
3  Her first boyfriend .............................................
4  She went out with him .............................................
5  She went to university .............................................
6  She fell in love .............................................
7  They got married .............................................
8  She had a baby .............................................
9  Her father retired .............................................

a  was a boy at her secondary school.
b  in her early thirties.
c  on a farm with lots of animals.
d  when she was in her late twenties.
e  in a small local hospital in 1972.
f  for six months.
g  just after the baby was born.
h  with another student doing medicine.
i  when she left school.

How many of the sentence beginnings on the left can you answer about your own life? Answer the ones you can.
A  Sleep

During the week I usually wake up at 6.30 a.m. I sometimes lie in bed for five minutes but then I have to get up (= get out of bed and get dressed). Most evenings, I go to bed at about 11.30 p.m. I'm usually very tired, so I go to sleep / fall asleep very quickly. Occasionally though, I can't get to sleep (= succeed in sleeping). When that happens, I sometimes manage to fall asleep about 3 a.m., then I oversleep (= sleep too long) in the morning. If I have a late night (= go to bed very late; ≠ an early night), I try to have a nap (= a short sleep, e.g. 20–25 minutes) in the afternoon. The weekends are different. On Saturday and Sunday I have a lie-in. (= stay in bed until later, e.g. 8 a.m. or 8.30 a.m.)

B  Food

In the week I have breakfast at 7.30 a.m., lunch at 1.00 p.m., and dinner around 7 p.m. I also have one or two snacks (= small amounts of food), e.g. cakes, biscuits or fruit, during the day at work. As I live alone / on my own / by myself (= without other people), I also have to make my own breakfast and dinner (= prepare breakfast and dinner for myself), but during the week I don't bother (= make an effort) to cook very much. I also have to feed (= give food to) my two cats twice a day as well.

Note: With breakfast, lunch or dinner in general, there is no definite article (the).

C  Keeping clean

In the summer I have a shower in the morning, but in the winter I often have a bath instead (= in place of a shower). Sometimes I have a shave at the same time, or I shave when I have a wash and clean/brush my teeth after breakfast. I wash my hair two or three times a week.

Note: In some contexts, it is more common in English to use have + noun than a single verb, e.g. I'm going to have a wash. [NOT I'm going to wash.]

D  Work

In the morning I leave home about 8.15 a.m. and get to work (= arrive at work) by 9 a.m. I have a lunch break (= stop work for lunch) from 1–2 p.m., and a couple of short breaks during the day. I leave work around 5.30 p.m. and get home about 6.15 p.m.

E  Evenings

During the week I usually stay in (= stay at home) and have a rest (= relax and do nothing). But at the weekend I often go out (= leave the house for social reasons, e.g. go to the cinema or disco with friends), but quite often I also have friends for dinner (= invite friends to my house and cook dinner for them), or friends just come round (= visit me at the house) for a chat (infml) (= conversation) or we play cards, e.g. poker or bridge.

F  Housework

I do the shopping (= buy the food) on Saturday. Fortunately (= luckily) I have a cleaner (= a person who cleans) and she does most of the housework: she does my washing (= washes the clothes), the washing-up (= washes the dishes) and does most of the ironing.
Exercises

48.1 The opposite page includes a number of expressions with ‘have + noun’, e.g. have breakfast, have a shower. Can you remember six more?

\[ \begin{array}{ll}
\text{have} & \text{have} \\
\text{have} & \text{have} \\
\text{have} & \text{have} \\
\end{array} \]

48.2 Now complete some more word partnerships and expressions by matching the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right.

\[ \begin{array}{ll}
1 \text{ fall} & \text{a rest} \\
2 \text{ do} & \text{my teeth} \\
3 \text{ have} & \text{the dog} \\
4 \text{ play} & \text{asleep} \\
5 \text{ go} & \text{cards} \\
6 \text{ clean} & \text{the ironing} \\
7 \text{ feed} & \text{early} \\
8 \text{ get up} & \text{to bed} \\
\end{array} \]

48.3 Complete this dialogue with suitable words or phrases from the opposite page.

A: Don’t \[ \text{?} \] \[ \text{?} \] to cook a meal this evening.
B: Why not?
A: We could \[ \text{?} \] \[ \text{?} \] instead.
B: Yeah. Where?
A: Well I’d like to go to that new Korean restaurant. We could ask Karen and Mike to come.
B: That’s miles away. No, I think I’d rather \[ \text{?} \] \[ ? \] and have an \[ \text{?} \] \[ \text{?} \] night.
A: But it’s Friday. You can have a \[ \text{?} \] \[ \text{?} \] tomorrow if we have a late night.
B: Yes I know but I’m tired. Look, why don’t you ask Karen and Mike to \[ \text{?} \] \[ ? \] for a meal. I can order some pizzas from the takeaway and we’ll have a nice evening here.
A: Sorry, but if you don’t want to come to the restaurant with me, I’ll go \[ \text{?} \] \[ ? \] .

48.4 Here are some common sentences in English. Translate them into your own language and then decide which of these sentences you often use in your own language.

1 Did you go out last night?
2 I think I’m going to stay in this evening.
3 I overslept this morning.
4 I couldn’t get to sleep last night.
5 Do you want to come round this evening?
6 I forgot to do the shopping.
7 What time did you get home?
8 I nearly fell asleep in the lesson today.

48.5 Can you find three facts from the opposite page which are exactly the same in your routine, three which are similar, and three which are completely different? Complete the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>same</th>
<th>similar</th>
<th>completely different</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I go to bed around 11.30 p.m.</td>
<td>I leave home at 8.40 a.m.</td>
<td>I never do any ironing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Homes and buildings

A  Houses

- semi-detached house
- detached house
- terraced houses

B  Flats

- balcony
- my flat
- my brother's flat

I live in a block of flats. My brother lives on the ground floor, and I have a flat on the third floor. Unfortunately there is no lift, so I have to climb three flights of stairs to reach my flat. But I do have a balcony with a wonderful view of the park opposite the flats.

Note: Steps are usually outside a building or inside a public building; they are stone or wooden. Stairs (pl) connect floors inside a building and are often covered with a carpet.

C  Buying and renting

Some people buy a flat or house (= they own it / it belongs to them). When they do this in Britain, people usually borrow money from a bank or an organisation called a Building Society. This money, which is called a mortgage, is often paid back over 25 years. Other people rent a house or flat (= they pay money every week or month to the person who owns the house). When they do this, the money they pay is called the rent, and the person who owns the house or flat is the landlord.

D  Describing a flat or house

The rooms on the ground floor are quite dark (= they don't get (= receive) very much sun. They are also quite noisy (= quiet) because they are near the roads and the traffic. The other negative thing is that the rooms are draughty (= cold air comes into the room through the windows and under the doors because they don't fit very well). This means it is expensive to heat the rooms (= to keep the rooms warm). Fortunately I have a very good central heating system. In other ways, it is also very nice: it's in good condition (= in a good state/doesn't need to be repaired; ≠ in bad condition), and the rooms are huge/enormous (= very, very big; ≠ tiny / very, very small)
Exercises

49.1 What can you remember about the house and block of flats on the opposite page? Without looking, try to answer these questions. If you think an answer is false, correct it. Finally, check your answers by looking at the opposite page.

1 Does the house have a garage?
2 Does it have a fence around the front garden?
3 Is there a window in the roof?
4 Is the gate open or shut?
5 How many steps are there in front of the entrance to the block of flats?
6 Does each flat have a balcony?
7 Does the brother live on the first floor?
8 Do the flats have a view of the countryside?

49.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable noun or verb.

1 I opened the ................ , walked up the ................ and rang the .................
2 We had to ................ six flights of stairs to get to her flat because the ................ wasn't working.
3 I've got a great ................ from my balcony.
4 Do you own the flat or do you ................ it?
5 I'm living in the house now but it actually ................ to my brother. He bought it two years ago. It was in very bad ................ then, but he spent a lot of money on it.
6 It costs a lot of money to ................ a house when you live in a cold climate. Central ................ is usually quite expensive.

49.3 Write down four more positive things and four more negative things you could say about a house/flat or the rooms in a house/flat. When you have finished, compare your answers with section D opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the rooms are very light</td>
<td>the rooms are very dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now think about your answers again. Which positive features are the most important for you? Which negative features do you hate the most?

49.4 What about your home? Answer these questions.

1 Do you live in a house or flat?
2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
3 If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
4 Does the house/flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
5 Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
6 Would you describe your house/flat as dark or light?
7 Is it noisy or quiet?
8 Do you have central heating?
Rooms

The living room or lounge (= where you sit, relax, talk and watch TV); the dining room; the kitchen; the bedroom(s); and the bathroom(s).

Some people also have a study (= room with a desk where you work), a utility room (= a room usually next to the kitchen, where you have a washing machine), a spare room (= a room you don’t use every day. Often this is a room that guests can use), and possibly a playroom for small children.

The lounge

While the cat was asleep in the armchair, I sat on the sofa and had a look at the paper. Then I turned on the TV and went to make a cup of tea.

The kitchen

I put the meat in the oven, put my dirty clothes in the washing machine, made the coffee and put the milk back in the fridge.
Exercises

50.1 Complete the descriptions. (There may be more than one possible answer.)
1 The bedroom, that's where you ..sleep.....
2 The kitchen, that's where you do the ..................
3 The bathroom, that's where you have a .................. and ..................
4 The lounge, that's where you .................. and ..................
5 The dining room, that's where you ..................
6 A spare room, that's often where ..................
7 A study, that's usually where you ..................
8 A utility room, that's often where ..................

50.2 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?
1 milk
2 meat that you are going to cook
3 dirty clothes
4 dirty cups and saucers
5 clean cups and saucers
6 biscuits and a packet of spaghetti

50.3 Here are some things you find in the lounge or kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they, and where do they belong?

skin nacitusr rapcet shadriswe teklet
faos veon digref hiamcrar pobcadru acepasnu

50.4 Complete these sentences with the correct adverb or preposition.
1 He put the plates .......... the cupboard.
2 I took the ham ........ of the fridge, made myself a couple of sandwiches, and then I put the rest of the ham ........ in the fridge.
3 I usually sit .......... the sofa and my husband sits .......... an armchair.
4 I was bored, so I turned ........ the television.
5 You normally cook it ........ the oven for about forty minutes.
6 I took the butter ........ of the fridge and put it ........ the table.

50.5 Imagine you have just moved into a new flat, and for the first six months you can only have six of the following. Which would you choose?
s Sofa       Carpet       Dishwasher       TV       Cooker       Curtains       Fridge       Desk
Hi-fi       Bed       Dining table       Washing machine       Kettle       Saucepans
Food mixer       Armchair

50.6 Write down:
1 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can turn on/off.
2 three things in the kitchen you can wash.
3 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can sit on.
4 two things you can use to boil water.
I put on my pyjamas, got into bed, set the alarm clock, switched off the light, and went to sleep.

I didn’t have time for a bath, but I had a wash, cleaned my teeth, and then I went to school.

Housework (U)

My room is very clean and tidy (= everything in order), but my brother is very untidy; he leaves his clothes all over the floor and never makes his bed. What’s worse, he doesn’t clean his room very often, so most of the time it is quite dirty.

I do the washing-up every evening after dinner, and I normally do the washing and ironing at the weekend when I have a bit more free time. I also hoover the carpets and polish the dining room table once a week.
Exercises

51.1 Find the correct ending on the right for each of these sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

1 I cleaned the light
2 I went into bed
3 I set a wash
4 I switched off my teeth
5 I had to sleep
6 I put on the alarm clock
7 I got my pyjamas

51.2 The pictures show six things the woman did this morning. Complete the sentences below.

1 She cleaned the light
2 She switched off a wash
3 She put on my pyjamas
4 She got into bed
5 She had the alarm clock
6 She washed my teeth

How often do you do these things? Complete these sentences about yourself.

1 I often
2 I sometimes
3 I occasionally
4 I never
5 I
6 I

51.3 Test your memory. Cover the opposite page and answer these questions about the pictures.

1 Does the alarm clock show 11.30?
2 Does he have one pillow or two?
3 Is the wardrobe open?
4 How many drawers does the chest of drawers have?
5 Is the girl in the bathroom holding a towel?
6 Is she looking in the mirror?
7 Is the shower above the bath?
8 Can you see any soap on the washbasin?

How well do you know your own home? Answer these questions as quickly as possible.

1 Have you got a mirror above the washbasin in the bathroom?
2 Have you got a towel rail on the same wall as the washbasin?
3 Is the toilet next to the bath/shower?
4 Have you got a wardrobe and chest of drawers in your bedroom?
5 Have you got a lamp on your bedside table?
6 Have you got an alarm clock?
Everyday problems

A  There's something wrong with ...

If there is a problem with a machine or a thing that you use e.g. TV, light, washing machine, computer, food mixer, pen, etc., we often use these expressions:

**There’s something wrong with** the TV. (≡ there is a problem with it)
The light’s **not working**. (≡ not functioning / there is no light)
The shower’s **not working properly**. (≡ it is functioning but not very well)
The telephone is **out of order**. (≡ not in use / not functioning)

**Note:** The phrase **out of order** is often used when a public machine or piece of equipment isn’t working, e.g. public telephone, public toilet, drinks machine at a station, etc.

B  In the home

Yesterday morning Paul had a lot of problems.

He dropped a cup and it broke

He got another cup, made a coffee, and then spilt it.

It ruined (= destroyed) his T-shirt because there was a large **stain** on it.

He decided to make some toast, but he **burnt** the first piece (if you burn something, you damage it with fire), then realised he’d **run out** of bread (= the bread was finished / there was no more bread). He did not leave home in a **good mood** (= feeling very happy).

C  Out and about

After Paul went out, things got worse. He left home with a ten-pound note in his pocket, and walked to the bus stop. Unfortunately he was a bit late and the bus was a bit early, so he **missed** the bus. While he waited for the next one, he got out his walkman, but the **batteries** had **run out** (= the batteries were finished). When the bus arrived, he got on and put his hand in his pocket – no ten-pound note (he had **lost** his **money**). The driver told him to get off. He didn’t want to be late for school, so he started running. Moments later, he saw a dog, but not its lead – and **tripped over** the lead.

He got to his feet, carried on to school, then he realised he had **left** his bag on the bus.

**Note:** Students often say ‘he forgot his bag on the bus’ in this situation. In English, we must use the verb leave if we say where something is. For example:
I’ve forgotten my bag; *but I left my bag on the bus*. 

108  English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
Exercises

52.1 Complete the past tense and past participle of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trip</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

1. I dropped the radio on the floor  
a. when I lit that cigarette.
2. The batteries have run out  
b. and had to wait ages for another.
3. I’m afraid I left  
c. and it made a mess on the carpet.
4. I spilt the drink  
d. to bring my money.
5. I missed the bus  
e. my money at home.
6. I burnt myself  
f. and now I can’t get it to work.
7. I forgot  
g. so I can’t listen to my walkman.

52.3 This is what happened when Paul had a party at his house. Write a description of the damage.

1. [Image of a glass being broken]  
2. [Image of batteries running out]  
3. [Image of a carpet being messy]

52.4 Write logical answers for each of these questions, using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1. How did you break that glass?
2. Why can’t we watch TV?
3. How did you cut your knee like that?
4. I’m cold. What’s wrong with the central heating?
5. What happened to the money I gave you?
6. Where’s your homework?
7. What’s wrong with this radio?
8. Why can’t you use the public phone in the station?

52.5 Answer these questions using often / occasionally / hardly ever / never.

How often do you:
- drop things?
- break things?
- burn things?
- spill things?
- lose things?
- forget things?
- trip over things?
- leave things behind?
- run out of things?

What sort of things do you drop, burn, run out of, etc.?
Money

A Notes and coins

Here are some examples of British money. The currency (= the type of money used in a country) is called sterling.

ten pounds fifty pence (we usually say 50p)
a ten-pound note a fifty-pence piece

B Common verbs

Notice how these common verbs are used.

spend £££ (on) sth. Last week I spent £100 on food, and £20 on books.
pay (for) sth. I paid £200 for my new desk. (= it cost me £200)
Where do I have to pay for these things?
cost My new desk cost (me) £200. (= I paid £200)
charge The mechanic charged me £100. (= asked me to pay £100 for the service he provided)
lend Could you lend me some money? or
borrow Could I borrow some money?
waste Parents often think that children waste their money (= use it badly) on sweets and other things that they don't need.
save (up) I'm saving (up) (= keeping some of my money when I receive it) for a new bike. I should have enough by the end of the year.

C Adjectives

free cheap reasonable quite expensive very expensive incredibly expensive

D Important words and phrases

I can't afford (= don't have enough money) to go on holiday this year.
How much is that watch worth? (= What is the value of that watch?)
It's worth about £50. (= the value is £50)
The cost of living (= how much people pay for things) is very high in places like Sweden or Norway, but people still have a good standard of living (= the level of money and comfort people have).
Exercises

53.1 Fill the gaps using the past tense of verbs from the box. Be careful, most of them are irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>spend</th>
<th>lose</th>
<th>pay</th>
<th>cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>waste</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. My car was five years old, so I .................. it and .................. a new one.
2. I was very sad when I .................. my watch in the street. It was a present from my wife and it .................. her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody .................. it the next day and took it to a Police Station.
3. I .................. over £2,000 for my computer, but it isn’t worth very much now.
4. My father .................. me £50 last week but I .................. most of it on a ticket for a concert on Friday.
5. Last week somebody .................. £1m in a game on television. It was incredibly exciting.
6. I’m afraid I .................. my money on those CDs because I never play them.

53.2 What can you say in these situations? Complete the sentences but do not use the underlined words and phrases.

Example: You want to tell a friend that a restaurant wasn’t cheap.

The restaurant was quite expensive. ..

1. You want to know the value of your friend’s gold ring.
   How much is ................................................................. ?
2. A friend wants to go to an expensive restaurant but you don’t have enough money.
   I’m afraid I ................................................................. .
3. You want to borrow some money from a friend.
   Could you ................................................................. ?
4. You want to know how much a friend paid for her dictionary.
   How much ................................................................. ?

53.3 How quickly can you answer these questions? Write down answers to all of them in one minute, then go back and check. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1. Is the currency in America called the dollar?
2. Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece?
3. If you lend something to someone, do they borrow it?
4. If you waste money, do you use it well?
5. Is ‘sterling’ a currency?
6. If you ‘can’t afford’ something, do you have enough money for it?
7. Does ‘cost of living’ mean the same as ‘standard of living’?
8. If someone tells you a hotel is reasonable, is it very expensive?

53.4 Write down the approximate price of six things in your country, e.g. a daily newspaper, a short bus journey, a cup of coffee in a bar/cafe, a ticket for the cinema, a takeaway hamburger, a pair of jeans, etc. Do you think the price is expensive, reasonable, cheap? Compare your answers with someone from the same town, and if possible, someone from a different country.
Health: illness and disease

A Common problems

She’s sneezing. She’s coughing. She’s got a sore throat. She’s blowing her nose. She’s got a temperature.

What’s the matter?
I’ve got a cold
I’ve got flu (U) (more serious than a cold)
I’ve got hay fever (U)
I’ve got diarrhoea (U)
I feel sick
I’ve got a hangover

How do you know? (the symptoms)
a sore throat, sneezing, a cough
symptoms for a cold + aching muscles and a temperature, e.g. 39.5
sneezing, runny nose, sore eyes
I keep going to the toilet
I want to vomit (= be sick)
headache, feeling sick

Cause of illness
a virus
a virus
allergic reaction to pollen from grass
often food, or a virus
many e.g. food, alcohol
too much alcohol

Note: For these illnesses, you can either buy something from the chemist, or go to your doctor, who may give you a prescription (= a piece of paper with an order for some medicine) that you get from the chemist.

B Aches and pains

Nouns: We only use ache with the following: I’ve got toothache (U), a stomach-ache, backache (U), earache (U) and a headache. For other parts of the body we use pain, e.g. I woke up in the night with a terrible pain in my chest.

Verbs: You can use ache for some things, e.g. my back aches; but hurt is more common to describe real pain, and it can be used with or without a direct object:
She hurt her foot when she jumped off the bus and fell over. (also injured here) or
She hurt herself when she jumped off the bus and fell over.
I hit my leg against the table and it really hurts. (= gives me a terrible pain)

Adjectives: The only common adjective is painful (≠ painless):
I had an injection yesterday and it was very painful.
A: Did it hurt when you had your filling? (= when the dentist fills a hole/cavity in the tooth)
B: No, it was painless.

C Serious illnesses

Doctors believe smoking is the major cause of lung cancer.
He had a heart attack and died almost immediately.
Hepatitis is a liver disease.
Asthma (chest illness causing breathing problems) has become more common.

Note: Illness and disease are often used in the same way, but disease is used for a serious condition caused by an infection e.g. a liver disease. Illness is a more general word.
Exercises

54.1 Write down the main symptom or symptoms for these conditions.
1 a cold: .................................................................
2 flu: ........................................................................
3 hay fever: ..............................................................
4 a hangover: ...........................................................
5 diarrhoea: ..............................................................
6 asthma: .................................................................

54.2 Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.

Examples: ache pain constipated stomach same different
1 disease diarrhoea 4 virus illness
2 chemist ache 5 flu muscle
3 hurt allergic 6 cough enough

54.3 Look at the pictures and write what happened in the space below. Try to use at least three or four words or phrases from the opposite page.

I had .........................................................................

54.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.
1 I hit my hand on the desk and it really ..............
2 They say she died of a heart ......................
3 She had some apples that weren’t ready to eat and now she’s got stomache-.................
4 I’ve got this terrible ......................... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
5 He died of ......................... cancer even though he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
6 I went to the doctor, and she gave me a .......... for some tablets.
7 Pollution makes her ......................... worse and it’s difficult for her to breathe.
8 There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious ......................... than the other.
9 I hurt ......................... when I fell off that chair.
10 My back ......................... from sitting at that computer all day.

54.5 Look at the opposite page again. Have you had any of these illnesses recently? Have you had any aches and pains recently? Make a list of the ones you have had. Are there any other illnesses you have had or still have? If so, find the name for it/them in English.
Health: injuries

Common injuries

An injury is damage to part of your body, usually caused by an accident in the home, on the roads, or during a game, e.g. of football. Here are some common injuries:

1. I cut (v, n) my finger
2. I cut my leg quite badly
3. I twisted my ankle
4. I broke my arm
5. I’ve got concussion
6. I burnt my hand
7. I’ve got a bruise (n, v) on my arm

What’s the problem? How did it happen? Result Solution
1. I cut (v, n) my finger using a knife it’s bleeding a bit
2. I cut my leg quite badly I fell over it’s bleeding quite a lot
3. I twisted my ankle running for a bus I can’t walk on it easily
4. I broke my arm I fell off my bike I can’t use it
5. I’ve got concussion playing football I’m confused; don’t
6. I burnt my hand taking something out know where I am
of a hot oven it’s very painful
7. I’ve got a bruise (n, v) it’s swollen and special cream
   on my arm of my desk blue/black in colour
   on the side

Hospital treatment

Look carefully at the key words in these texts.

John fell off a chair, hit his head on the floor, and knocked himself unconscious. His wife called an ambulance but John was still unconscious when it arrived. He was rushed to hospital (= taken very quickly) where they kept him for two days for blood tests.

I jumped for the ball and collided with another player (= we ran into / hit each other). We both had cuts on our head, but I had to go to hospital for eight stitches.

Wounds and injuries

Wound (n, v) and injury are both used to describe damage to the body, but a wound is generally caused by a weapon (e.g. gun or knife) and it is usually intentional.

He shot the man in the chest. (= a bullet wound in the chest) [from a gun]
He stabbed the boy in the back. (= a knife wound in the back)
He got into a fight and got beaten up. He had a black eye and two broken ribs.
Exercises

55.1 Complete the table with the correct verb forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>wound</td>
<td>blood</td>
<td>bandage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>injury</td>
<td>bandage</td>
<td>bruise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>bruise</td>
<td>treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

55.2 Look at the pictures and write the story.

Now compare your story with the model answer in the key.

55.3 Complete these conversations in a suitable way.

1 A: ... bleeding quite a bit, so I had to put a plaster on it before I could finish.
   B: How did you do it, anyway?
   A: Oh, I was ............................................................... 

2 A: ... the next day the eye was really swollen and he had bruises down both his arms.
   B: My goodness. What did he tell his parents?
   A: More or less the truth. He said ........................................ 

3 A: ... tried to get up again but I couldn’t move. It was incredibly painful, but
   fortunately there were a few pedestrians around to help me.
   B: That’s lucky. But what were you doing?
   A: ................................................................. 

4 A: ... my face was cut and he had a terrible bruise on his head.
   B: Sounds very unpleasant. How did it happen exactly?
   A: ................................................................. 

55.4 Answer these questions about yourself. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

1 Have you ever broken your arm or leg?
2 Have you ever needed stitches?
3 Have you ever had concussion?
4 Have you ever been unconscious?
5 Have you ever had a blood test?
6 Have you ever been in an ambulance?
Note: Some of these words are plural nouns, e.g. jeans and trousers. See Unit 27.

B Important verbs

Use this text to guess the meaning of the key words.

I got up at 7.30, had a shower, got dressed, and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I put on my overcoat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I took off my coat and hung it up behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I took my jacket off as well. During my lunchbreak I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one shop and tried it on, but it didn't fit me – it was too small and they didn't have a bigger size.

Note: Notice the different word order with the verbs put on, take off, hang up, and try on. If you want to know the rule about this, turn to Unit 17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style.

C Too small and not long enough

The man is wearing a suit, but it doesn't fit him very well: the jacket is too small (= not big enough); the trousers are too short (= not long enough).
Exercises

56.1 Finish this sentence with six different items of clothes.
I need a pair of ........................................
........................................................
........................................................
........................................................
........................................................

56.2 Find a logical order for these sentences.
1 He took off his trousers.                      6 He paid for the suit.
2 He put his shoes back on.                     7 He took off his shoes.
3 He tried on the suit.                         8 He went back to the sales assistant.
4 He went into the changing room.              9 He put his trousers on again.
5 He took it off.

56.3 What’s missing?
Write down anything that is missing in the second picture of the woman.
........................................................
........................................................
........................................................
........................................................
........................................................

56.4 Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)
1 She decided to wear a ................... and a ................... instead of a dress.
2 I tried on a .......................; the jacket was fine but the ....................... were too short.
3 It was hot in the office, so I took off my jacket and ..................., and rolled up the sleeves of my .....................
4 I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn’t big ...................

and they didn’t have it in a bigger ...................
5 I also wanted a new jumper, but unfortunately the medium size was ................ big and the small size wasn’t big ..................

56.5 Write down:
1 five things usually worn by women only; and five things worn by men and women.
2 a list of clothes you like and don’t like wearing.
3 five more items of clothing you have at home in your wardrobe / chest of drawers.
Shops and shopping

shop assistant: person who works in a shop; also called sales assistant
shop window: the window at the front of the shop
shopping centre: a place with many shops, outside or indoors
window shopping: to look round the shops but not buy anything
shopping list: a list of things to buy

I went shopping yesterday (= I went to the shops to buy food or clothes, etc.)
I did the shopping yesterday (= I bought food and household goods)

Types of shop (and what they sell)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of shop</th>
<th>What it sells</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>department store</td>
<td>almost everything (furniture, clothes, electrical appliances, e.g. TV and washing machine, toys, jewellery, etc. and sometimes food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket</td>
<td>food and household goods, e.g. cleaning products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newsagent(s)</td>
<td>newspapers, cigarettes, sweets, stationery, e.g. writing paper, cards, envelopes, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher(s)</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greengrocer(s)</td>
<td>fruit and vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boutique</td>
<td>fashionable clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist(s)</td>
<td>medicine, baby products, shampoo, soap, toothpaste, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Most other shops are just ‘+ shop’, e.g. shoe shop, record shop, camera shop, etc.

Useful words and expressions

ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  CUSTOMER: Yes, I’m looking for (= I want) a blue jumper.
ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  CUSTOMER: No, I’m just looking, thanks. (= I don’t need help)
ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  CUSTOMER: I’m being served, thanks. (= another assistant is already serving/helping me)

ASSISTANT: What size are you looking for? (e.g. big? small? medium? 12? 14? 16?)
CUSTOMER: Where’s the changing room? (= the room where you try on clothes; also called the fitting room)

ASSISTANT: It’s down there on the right.
CUSTOMER: Yes, I’ll take this one / these. (= Yes, I want to buy this one / these)
CUSTOMER: No, I’ll leave it thanks. (= No, I don’t want to buy it/them)
CUSTOMER: Excuse me. Where do I pay for these?
ASSISTANT: Over at the cash desk/till.
CUSTOMER: And can I pay by cheque / credit card?
ASSISTANT: Yes, of course.
Exercises

57.1 Can you find a ‘general’ word on the opposite page to describe each group of items below?
Example: ..fruit.... e.g. apples, oranges and peaches
1 ............... e.g. shoes, a blouse, a jacket
2 ............... e.g. a sofa, an armchair, a table
3 ............... e.g. a television, a washing machine, a food mixer
4 ............... e.g. washing powder, soap, milk, toilet paper
5 ............... e.g. teddy bear, plastic gun, lego
6 ............... e.g. writing paper, envelopes

57.2 Where would you buy each of the items on the left? Choose from the shops in the box.

Now write down two more things you could buy in each shop.

57.3 What word or phrase is being defined in these sentences?
1 A shop where you can buy fashionable clothes.
2 A place with many shops, either outside or indoors.
3 A person who works in a shop.
4 The place where you can try on clothes in a shop.
5 The place where you pay for things in a shop.
6 To look round the shops without planning to buy anything.
7 The shop where you buy meat.
8 The shop where you buy medicines, baby products, shampoo, etc.

57.4 Complete this shopping dialogue.

ASSISTANT 1: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm (!)......................... a blouse like this, but in blue.
ASSISTANT 1: I see. And what (?).......................... are you looking for?
CUSTOMER: Uh, 14 usually.
ASSISTANT 1: Ok, I'll just go and see if we've got any.
CUSTOMER: Thank you.
ASSISTANT 2: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: No, it's OK, I'm (?).......................... thanks.
ASSISTANT 1: Here we are. The last one in stock.
CUSTOMER: Great. Can I try it on?
ASSISTANT 1: Yes of course. The (?).......................... is just over there.
ASSISTANT 1: How was it?
CUSTOMER: Fine. I'll (?)..........................
ASSISTANT: Right. Would you like to pay over there at the (?)..........................?
A Fruit
apple  orange  lemon  strawberry  peach  melon
pear  banana  grapes  pineapple  cherry

B Vegetables
potato  green beans  peas  carrot  cauliflower
green beans  peas  carrot  cauliflower
pepper  cabbage  aubergine  mushrooms  courgette

C Salad
A salad is a mixture of uncooked vegetables. The main ingredient in a salad is lettuce, but it may also contain tomato, cucumber, and other things.

D Animals (meat), fish and shellfish
animal: cow  calf (= young cow)  lamb (= young sheep)  pig
meat: beef  veal  lamb  pork
Note: A person who does not eat meat is a vegetarian.
Exercises

58.1 Can you write down a vegetable and fruit:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Vegetable</th>
<th>Fruit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>beginning with the letter ‘p’</td>
<td>potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>beginning with the letter ‘b’</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>beginning with the letter ‘m’</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>beginning with the letter ‘c’</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>beginning with the letter ‘a’</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.2 Find a word in the right-hand box where the underlined letter(s) are pronounced in the same way as the underlined letter(s) in a word in the left-hand box. Be careful: there are two extra words in the right-hand box which you do not need.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lettuce</td>
<td>onion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>banana</td>
<td>aubergine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>melon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salad</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calf</td>
<td>lamb</td>
<td>cauliflower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork veal salmon beef
2 salmon shrimp oyster lobster
3 lettuce aubergine tomato cucumber
4 peach onion mushroom courgette
5 chicken lamb beef mussels

58.4 Do you eat the skin (= the outside) of these fruits – always, usually, or never? Make three lists.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apples</td>
<td>pineapples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pears</td>
<td>bananas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oranges</td>
<td>lemons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.5 Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else who has done this exercise.

1 In my country .................................. is/are more common than ..................................
2 In my country .................................. is/are more expensive than ..................................
3 In my country a mixed salad usually contains ..................................
4 In my country we don’t grow ..................................
5 And we don’t often eat ..................................
6 Personally, I prefer ............................... to ..................................
7 I love ............................... but I don’t really like ..................................
8 My favourite meat is ..................................
Ways of cooking food

boil: in water, e.g. carrots
fry: in oil or butter above the heat, e.g. sausages
grill: under the heat, e.g. toast or meat
roast: in the oven using oil, e.g. meat
bake: in the oven without oil, e.g. cakes

Note: Food which is not cooked is raw.

Cooking steak

If you have steak you can eat it rare (= cooked very quickly and still red); medium-rare (cooked a bit longer and just red in the middle); medium (cooked a bit more and just pink); or well-done (cooked even longer and not pink at all).

Describing food

tasty: has lots of taste: a positive word; tasteless: a negative word
bland: without a strong taste; neutral in flavour, e.g. boiled rice
sweet: lots of sugar; bitter
salty: lots of salt
hot/spicy: lots of spice, e.g. curry
fresh: recently produced, e.g. fresh bread; recently picked, e.g. fresh fruit
tender: easy to cut; a positive word used to describe meat; tough
fatty: meat with a lot of fat; lean
fattening: food which makes you put on weight / get fat, e.g. cream, biscuits, etc.

Eating in restaurants

In Britain you often have three courses: a starter (e.g. soup), a main course (e.g. steak or chicken), and a dessert (e.g. strawberries or ice cream). You may also have an aperitif (= a drink before the meal, e.g. gin and tonic), and coffee after the meal. When you pay the bill (= the money for the meal; AmEng = check), you sometimes also leave a tip (= money) for the waiter if service is not included in the price. (10% is a normal tip.) If it is a popular restaurant, you may also need to book (= reserve) a table in advance (= before you go).

The menu

Starters
- Broccoli Soup
- Home-made Chicken Liver Pâté
- Tagliatelle with Courgettes, Cream and Bacon

Main Courses
- Baked Salmon with Spinach
- Breast of Chicken in a White Wine Sauce with Mushrooms
- Grilled Fillet Steak in a Pepper Sauce
- Mushroom Risotto

Desserts
- Chocolate Mousse
- Fruit Salad
- Ice Cream
Exercises

59.1 Do you often eat the following food in your country? If so, do you eat it in the same way?

Example: In Britain, we often eat ‘fish’ but not usually ‘raw fish’.

raw fish     fried rice
fried eggs    grilled sausages
baked potatoes roast beef
raw spinach   roast peppers
fried bread   boiled eggs
grilled cheese baked bananas

59.2 Look at the menu on the opposite page again, and answer these questions.

1 Which starter doesn't contain vegetables?
2 Which dish contains pasta?
3 Which dish may be rare or well-done?
4 Which dish is definitely cooked in the oven?
5 Which dish will probably be quite spicy?
6 Which dish contains alcohol?
7 Which meat may be fatty or tough if you are unlucky?
8 Which dessert(s) will be quite sweet?
9 Which dessert must be very fresh?
10 You are on a diet (= you are trying to lose weight) and you do not want to have a fattening meal. Which would probably be the best dish to choose for each course?

59.3 Choose a possible adjective from the opposite page to describe each of these foods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lemon</td>
<td>ice cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>fillet steak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honey</td>
<td>chillies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>avocado</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

59.4 What about restaurants in your country, and your own taste in food? Answer these questions about yourself and your country.

1 Do you normally need to book a restaurant in advance?
2 Is it common to give the waiter a tip? If so, how much?
3 Do you normally eat three courses in a restaurant? If not, how many courses do you normally have?
4 How many of these do you normally find on the table in a restaurant in your country?

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>salt</td>
<td>yes/no</td>
<td>pepper</td>
<td>yes/no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>yes/no</td>
<td>vinegar</td>
<td>yes/no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napkins</td>
<td>yes/no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Generally, do you add more salt to your food when you eat in restaurants?
6 Do you like steak? If so, how do you like it cooked?
7 Would you say that food in your country is very spicy?
8 Would you say that food in your country is generally quite fattening?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.
Town and country

A Towns
Here are some of the things you will find in most big towns.

- **a commercial centre**: an area with lots of banks and company offices
- **shopping centres**: places with many shops, either indoors or outdoors
- **car parks**: places to leave many cars
- **factories**: buildings where you make/manufacture things, e.g. cars
- **suburbs**: areas outside the centre of town where people live
- **libraries**: places where you can borrow books
- **pollution**: dirty air because of smoke and petrol fumes
- **night-life**: places to go at night, e.g. bars, restaurants, cinemas, theatres, discos, etc.

B The country
Here are some of the things you will find in the countryside.

C Advantages and disadvantages
People who prefer the countryside to big towns, often say this:

**Towns:**
- are noisy
- are dirty and polluted
- are stressful
- are crowded (= full of people)
- are dangerous

**The countryside:**
- is quiet and peaceful
- is clean
- is calm and relaxing
- has lots of open space
- is safe

People who prefer big towns have a different point of view:

**In towns:**
- there are plenty (= lots) of things to do
- it's exciting
- there's a wide range of shops (= many different shops)
- there's lots of night-life, e.g. bars, cinemas, discos

**In the countryside:**
- there's nothing to do
- it's boring
- there are only a few shops
- there's no night-life
Exercises

60.1 Complete this table of opposites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Big towns and cities</th>
<th>Village life and the countryside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quiet and peaceful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean air</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stressful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lots of open spaces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing to do in the evening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you agree with everything in the table above? Put a tick (✓) beside each answer you do, and a (X) beside each answer you don’t. If possible compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

60.2 Organise the words in the box into three groups: things that you usually find in towns (in your country), things you usually find in the country, and things you often find in both town and country.

fields factories gates car parks
libraries tractors suburbs villages
traffic Town Hall shopping centres footpaths
pollution valleys night-life woods

town country town and country

60.3 Look at the picture on the opposite page for one minute, then cover it and complete this text based on the picture.

We opened the (1) .........., said ‘hello’ to the man on the (2) .........., and then followed the (3) .......... across the (4) .......... and down into the (5) .......... We stopped and had a picnic by the river and then walked up through the (6) .......... on the other side of the (7) .......... A bit later we came to a (8) .......... where we stopped and bought some bread.

60.4 Think of your journey to school, college or work. How many of these things do you see or pass?

a car park factories woods a library a museum parking meters lots of traffic commuters a night club fields suburbs a railway station
On the road

A Road features

- traffic lights
- junction
- a bend in the road (this road bends to the right)
- pedestrian crossing (= where people can cross the road)
- roadworks

B An accident

Read the text and use the context and the diagram to help you with the key words.

There was a serious accident on one of the main roads into Stuttgart this morning. An old lorry (AmEng = truck) broke down in the middle of the road, and the driver couldn't move it. It was eight o'clock, the middle of the rush hour, so it soon created a terrible traffic jam. Drivers got very angry and a man in a Mercedes tried to go round the lorry. Unfortunately another car was coming in the opposite direction. The driver braked hard and tried to stop, but he couldn't prevent the accident – the Mercedes crashed into the front of his car. The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was badly injured and both cars were very badly damaged.

C Giving directions

Go along here, turn right into the main road, then take the first turning on your left. Keep going, and then turn left again when you get to the bank.

D Important words and phrases

- Taxis (AmEng = cab) use the road; pedestrians use the pavement (AmEng = sidewalk).
- The speed limit on motorways in Great Britain is 70 mph (120 kph).
- Most petrol stations (AmEng = gas station) in Great Britain are self-service.
- Get in the car and remember to fasten your seat belt.
- The other car was going very slowly, so I decided to overtake (= pass it on the outside lane).
Exercises

61.1 Complete the text for directions to the bank using the map to help you.
Go ................................ and  ................................ at the junction. Then you ................................ right when you ................................. Then ................................ again ................................. Road, and the bank is ................................. just ................................ cinema.

61.2 Fill the gaps with the correct words.
1 Don’t forget to ................................ your ................................ belt when you ................................ the car.
2 There was a bad accident this morning. One driver died, the other driver was badly ............................, and both cars were badly .................................
3 In the morning, the ................................ starts at about 7 o’clock and goes on until at least 9.30. Then it starts again about 4.30 in the afternoon.
4 It was raining, so when I ................................ the car didn’t stop quickly enough, and I ................................ into the back of the car in front.
5 The bicycle hit me just as I stepped off the ................................ to cross the road.
6 The car ................................, so I phoned a garage and they sent someone to repair it.
7 There was a terrible ................................, and that’s why it took me two hours to get home in the car.
8 I was doing about 65 mph on the inside ................................ of the motorway, and suddenly a car ................................ me doing about 90 mph.

61.3 Many road signs are international. Do you know or can you guess what these mean?

1 You can’t ...................... 4 There’s only one ...................... 7 traffic ......................
2 50 mph* is the ...................... 5 end of ...................... 8 a low ......................
3 you can’t ...................... 6 a car ...................... 9 ......................

(*mph = miles per hour; 50 mph = 80 kph approximately)

61.4 Answer these questions about your own country.
1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings?
4 Are most petrol stations self-service, or do people serve you?
A  Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.

A: How did you get here?
B: I came by bus.
A: And the others?
B: Sue and John came by car.
A: And Paul?
B: He missed the bus, so he had to take a taxi.

B  Catch a bus, take a taxi

Bus
driver
drives
(£) fare
catch/take
get on/off
bus station

Train
driver
drives
fare
catch/take
get on/off
railway station

Plane
pilot
drives
air fare
take
airport

Taxi
driver
drives
fare
take
get in/out

taxi rank

Bicycle
cyclist
go on (my)
get in/out
taxi rank

Car
driver
rides
go by
get in/out

C  Railway stations

You may hear these announcements.

The train now arriving at platform 3 is the 8.48 to London Paddington, calling at Swindon and Reading.

Passengers for Didcot change (= change trains) at Swindon.

We apologise to passengers for the late arrival of the 8.52 to Oxford.

This train will now arrive at platform 6 in approximately 20 minutes.

The next train due to (= timetabled to) arrive at platform 4 is the 9.06 to Birmingham.

D  Buses

Sometimes buses are not very punctual (= they don’t arrive at the correct time). Where I live buses should run (= come) every ten minutes, but sometimes I wait at the bus stop for half an hour with a long queue (AmEng = line) of people, and then three buses come together, and they’re all full up (= full of people, and no more people can get on). On other occasions the bus is early and I miss it (= I don’t catch it. NOT I lost the bus).
62.1 Cross out the incorrect word in these sentences.
1 You mustn’t ride/drive a motorbike without a crash helmet.
2 She told him to get in / get on the car and fasten his seat belt.
3 Bus fares/tickets are getting more expensive.
4 Trains to the airport travel / run every half hour.
5 The pilot couldn’t drive / fly the plane in such bad weather.
6 Have a look at the train schedule / timetable to find out when the next one arrives.
7 We were late, so we had to take / catch a taxi.
8 I left my house a bit late and I lost / missed the bus.

62.2 Write down two different words that can combine with each of the words below.
Example: miss ...the bus...
...the train...
1 ........................................ 3 ........................................ 5 ........................................
fare station get in
........................................ ........................................ ........................................
2 ........................................ 4 ........................................ 6 ........................................
get on driver journey
........................................ ........................................ ........................................

62.3 Identify these means of transport without looking at the opposite page.

1 ........................................ 2 ........................................ 3 ........................................ 4 ........................................ 5 ........................................

62.4 Fill the gaps with the correct word.
1 Our train leaves from ....................... 7.
2 I waited at the ....................... for ten minutes, and then two buses arrived.
3 I couldn’t get on the first bus because it was ....................... .
4 The train was half an hour late. I think the reason for the late ....................... was bad weather.
5 Buses are not very ....................... . Sometimes they come every five minutes, then other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ....................... of people.
7 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ....................... from the airport to our hotel.
8 I think the next train is ....................... to arrive in about ten minutes.

62.5 Are these statements true or false in your experience?
1 Trains are more reliable than buses.
2 Train fares are more expensive than bus fares.
3 Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.
4 Railway stations are nicer places than bus stations.
5 You get to the place you are going faster by taxi than by car.
**A What do you do?**

People may ask you about your job. They can ask and you can answer in different ways:

What do you do? I'm (+ job) e.g. a banker / an engineer / a teacher / a builder
What's your job? I work in (+ place or general area) e.g. a bank / marketing
What do you do for a living? I work for (+ name of company) e.g. Union Bank, ICI, Fiat

*Note*: ‘Work’ is usually an uncountable noun, so you cannot say ‘a work’. If you want to use the indefinite article you must say ‘a job’, e.g. She hasn’t got a job at the moment.

**B What does that involve? (= What do you do in your job?)**

When people ask you to explain your work/job, they may want to know your main responsibilities (= your duties / what you have to do), or something about your daily routine (= what you do every day/week). They can ask like this: What does that (i.e. your job) involve?

*Main responsibilities*
I'm in charge of (= responsible for) all deliveries out of the factory.
I have to deal with any complaints (= take all necessary action if there are complaints).
I run the coffee bar and restaurant in the museum (= I am in control of it / I manage it).

*Note*: We often use responsible for / in charge of for part of something, e.g. a department or some of the workers; and run for control of all of something, e.g. a company or a shop.

*Daily duties/routines*
I have to go to / attend (fm1) a lot of meetings.
I visit/see/meet clients (= people I do business with or for).
I advise clients (= give them help and my opinion).
It involves doing quite a lot of paperwork (a general word we use for routine work that involves paper e.g. writing letters, filling in forms, etc.). Note the -ing form after involve.

**C Pay**

Most workers are paid (= receive money) every month and this pay goes directly into their bank account. It is called a salary. We can express the same idea using the verb to earn:

My salary is $60,000 a year. (= I earn $60,000 a year.)

With many jobs you get (= receive) holiday pay and sick pay (when you are ill). If you want to ask about holidays, you can say:

How much holiday do you get? or How many weeks’ holiday do you get?

The total amount of money you receive in a year is called your income. This could be your salary from one job, or the salary from two different jobs you have. And on this income you have to pay part to the government - called income tax.

**D Working hours**

For many people in Britain, these are 8.30–9.00 a.m. to 5.00–5.30 p.m. Consequently people often talk about a nine-to-five job (= regular working hours). Some people have flexi-time (= they can start an hour or so earlier or finish later); and some have to do shiftwork (= working at different times, e.g. days one week and nights the next week). Some people also work overtime (= work extra hours). Some people are paid to do/work overtime, others are not paid.
Exercises

63.1 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns or phrases on the right. Use each word once only.
1 earn
2 work
3 pay
4 go to
5 deal with
6 run

overtime
meetings
a shop
clients
£500
income tax

63.2 Starting with the words you are given, rewrite each of these sentences using vocabulary from the opposite page. The basic meaning must stay the same.

Example: I’m a banker.
I work in banking.

1 What do you do?
What’s your job?

2 I earn $50,000 dollars.

3 I get £20,000 from my teaching job and another £10,000 from writing.

4 I am a chemist.
I work for the company.

5 In my job I have to look after and maintain all the computers in the building.

6 I’m responsible for one of the smaller departments.
I’m in charge of the department.

63.3 This is part of a conversation with a teacher about her job. Can you supply the missing questions?

A: ..................................
B: I usually start at nine and finish at four.

A: ..................................
B: Yes a bit. On certain courses I work until five o’clock, and then I get paid extra.

A: ..................................
B: Twelve weeks. That’s one of the good things about being a teacher.

A: ..................................
B: No we don’t, I’m afraid. That’s one of the disadvantages of being a teacher. But I suppose money isn’t everything.

63.4 Can you answer these general knowledge questions about work?

1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
2 Can you name three jobs that get very high salaries in your country?
3 When you start paying income tax in your country, what is the minimum amount you have to pay?
4 What jobs often involve shiftwork? (Give at least two examples.)
5 Is flexi-time common in your company or your country?

63.5 Think about your own job. How many of the things on the opposite page do you do? How is your work different? Can you explain your responsibilities and daily duties in English?
The medical profession

These people treat (= give medical treatment and try to solve a medical problem) and look after (= care for / take care of) others: doctor, nurse, surgeon (= a specialist doctor who works in a hospital and operates on people), dentist, and vet (= animal doctor). The word ‘vet’ is a short form for ‘veterinary surgeon’.

Manual jobs

These are jobs where you work with your hands, and all the examples below are skilled jobs (= they need a lot of training).

bricklayer (builds walls)
carpenter (makes things using wood)
plumber (fits and repairs water pipes, bathrooms, etc.)
electrician (fits and repairs electrical things)
mechanic (repairs cars)

Professional people

Job
architect
lawyer
engineer
accountant
university lecturer
broker (stock market)

Definition
designs buildings
represents people with legal problems
plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
controls the financial situation of people and companies
teaches in a university
buys and sells stocks and shares

The armed forces and the emergency services

soldier (in the army)
sailor (in the navy)
pilot (in the air force)
police officer (in the police force)
firefighter (in the fire brigade)
Exercises

64.1 Write down at least one job from the opposite page that would probably be impossible for these people.

1 Someone who didn’t go to university.
2 Someone with very bad eyesight (= cannot see very well).
3 Someone who is always seasick on a boat.
4 Someone who understands nothing about cars.
5 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends.
6 Someone who is afraid of dogs.
7 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.
8 Someone who is terrible at numbers and figures.
9 Someone who can’t stand the sight of blood.
10 Someone who is a pacifist, who is anti-war.

64.2 Complete these definitions.

1 An architect ... designs buildings...
2 A university lecturer .................................................................
3 An accountant ...........................................................................
4 A vet ...........................................................................................
5 A lawyer ....................................................................................
6 An engineer ................................................................................
7 A bricklayer ............................................................................... 
8 A stock broker ............................................................................
9 A mechanic ................................................................................
10 A surgeon ................................................................................

64.3 Respond to the statements below, as in the example.

Example: A: He’s a policeman.
B: ...Really? When did he join the police force? ...

1 A: He’s a soldier.
   B: .................................................................?
2 A: He’s a sailor.
   B: .................................................................?
3 A: He’s a fighter pilot.
   B: .................................................................?
4 A: He’s a firefighter.
   B: .................................................................?

64.4 You have just bought a piece of land and you are planning to build a house on it. Write down at least six people from the opposite page that you may need to help you. What would you need their help for?

Example: a bricklayer to build the walls

64.5 Write a list of friends, relatives and neighbours (just choose people who have jobs). Can you write down what each person does? Use a bilingual dictionary to help you if necessary.

Example: My uncle Jim is an engineer. His wife is an accountant.
The career ladder

A Getting a job
When Paul left school he applied for (= wrote an official request for) a job in the accounts department of a local engineering company. They gave him a job as a trainee (= a very junior person in a company). He didn’t earn very much but they gave him a lot of training (= organised help and advice with learning the job), and sent him on training courses.

Note: Training is an uncountable noun, so you cannot say ‘a training’. You can only talk about training (in general), or a training course (if you want to refer to just one). Here you can use the verbs do or go on: I did / went on several training courses last year.

B Moving up
Paul worked hard at the company and his prospects (= future possibilities in the job) looked good. After his first year he got a good pay rise (= more money), and after two years he was promoted (= given a higher position with more money and responsibility). After six years he was in charge of (= responsible for / the boss of) the accounts department with five other employees (= workers in the company) under him (= under his responsibility/authority).

C Leaving the company
By the time Paul was 30, however, he decided he wanted a fresh challenge (= a new exciting situation). He was keen to work abroad, so he resigned from his company (= officially told the company he was leaving his job; you can also say ‘he quit the company’) and started looking for a new job with a bigger company. After a couple of months he managed to find a job with an international company which involved (= included) a lot of foreign travel. He was very excited about the new job and at first he really enjoyed the travelling, but ...

D Hard times
After about six months, Paul started to dislike the constant moving around, and after a year he hated it; he hated living in hotels, and he never really made any friends in the new company. Unfortunately his work was not satisfactory either and finally he was sacked (= told to leave the company / dismissed / given the sack) a year later.
After that, Paul found things much more difficult. He was unemployed (= out of work / without a job) for over a year. He had to sell his car and move out of his new house. Things were looking bad and in the end Paul had to accept a part-time job (= working only some of the day or some of the week) on a fruit and vegetable stall in a market.

E Happier times
To his surprise, Paul loved the market. He made lots of friends and enjoyed working out in the open air. After two years, he took over (= took control of) the stall. Two years later he opened a second stall, and after ten years he had fifteen stalls. Last year Paul retired (= stopped working completely) at the age of 55, a very rich man.
Exercises

65.1 Write a single word synonym for each of these words/phrases.
1 given the sack = ........................................
2 out of work = ..........................................
3 left the company = .....................................
4 was given a better position in the company = ........................................
5 future possibilities in a job = ........................................
6 stopped working for ever = ........................................
7 workers in a company = ........................................

65.2 Find the logical answer on the right for each of the questions on the left.
1 Why did they sack him? a) Because he was nearly 65.
2 Why did they promote him? b) Because he was late for work every day.
3 Why did he apply for the job? c) Because he needed more training.
4 Why did he retire? d) Because he was out of work.
5 Why did he resign? e) Because he was the best person in the department.
6 Why did he go on the course? f) Because he didn’t like his boss.

65.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word or phrase.
1 I don’t want a full-time job. I’d prefer to work ......................
2 She’d like to go on another training ......................
3 I’m bored in my job. I need a fresh ......................
4 He works on a stall in the ......................
5 At the end of this year we should get a good pay ......................
6 She’s got more than a hundred workers under ......................
7 I didn’t know he was the new manager. When did he take ......................?
8 It’s a boring job and the pay is awful. Why did he ......................?

65.4 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>General noun</th>
<th>Personal noun(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>promote</td>
<td>..................</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employ</td>
<td>..................</td>
<td>..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resign</td>
<td>..................</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retire</td>
<td>..................</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>..................</td>
<td>..................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

65.5 Have you got a job in a company? If so, answer these questions as quickly as you can.
1 What does your job involve?
2 Are you responsible for anything or anyone?
3 Have you had much training from the company?
4 Have the company sent you on any training courses?
5 Have you been promoted since you started in the company?
6 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
7 How do you feel about your future prospects in the company?
8 Are you happy in the job or do you feel it is time for a fresh challenge in another company?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.
In the office and in the factory

A The office

Office work

Brenda works for a company which produces furniture. She works in an office, which is just opposite the factory where the furniture is made. This is how she spends her day:

She works at a computer most of the time, where she writes letters and reports.

She answers phone calls, mostly from retailers. (= shops selling the factory’s furniture)

She makes phone calls to retailers, and the factory making the furniture.

She sends invoices to customers. (= paper showing products sold and the money to pay)

She shows visitors around the factory.

She does general paperwork, e.g. filing reports, writing memos, answering letters.

She arranges meetings for her boss and other managers in the company.

C The ‘shop floor’ of the factory

This is where products are manufactured (= made). Modern factories have fewer workers than in the past – this is because of automation (= machines do most of the work), and most factories use an assembly line (= an arrangement in which each worker makes a part of the product and then passes it on to the next person or machine). On an assembly line, workers fit/assemble the different parts, and supervisors (= people in charge/control) check/inspect/examine each stage to make sure the product meets the required standard (= is good enough).

D Finished goods

Goods (pl) is the general word used for things that are made to be sold. When the product, e.g. a radio, is finished, it is packaged (= put in plastic and then in a box) and stored (= kept) in a warehouse. When a customer, e.g. an electrical shop, orders some of these goods, they are delivered to the shop (= taken to the shop) using road or rail.
Exercises

66.1 Write down three nouns that could follow each of these verbs. You can use the same noun more than once. Not all of them are on the left-hand page.

1 write ........................................... a letter ...........................................

2 send ........................................... 4 arrange ...........................................

66.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word to form a compound noun in each case.

1 I told him to put the details on the notice ............................................
2 She has to check the goods when they come off the assembly ............................................
3 I’m sure I took the reports out of the filing ............................................ and put them in my brief ............................................
4 It’s a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general paper ............................................
5 I threw all that stuff in the wastepaper ............................................

66.3 What words from the opposite page are being defined here?

1 The place where you store finished products before they are sold.
2 The process of using machines to do work that used to be done by men and women.
3 A plural noun for things that are made to be sold.
4 A thing you often hang on the wall, which tells you the date.
5 A book where you often write down all your appointments and things you have to do.
6 A piece of paper which shows the products that a customer bought and the money they have to pay.
7 A person or business that sells goods to the public.
8 A part of a desk where you often keep pens, paper, notes, etc.

66.4 Replace the underlined verb using a different verb with the same meaning (in this context).

1 This particular machine is made in Germany.
2 I help them to assemble the different parts.
3 The supervisor always inspects our work carefully
4 When the books are printed they are kept in the warehouse.
5 The factory said they’ll be able to take the furniture to the shops next Monday.

66.5 Have you got a job? If so, how many of these statements are true for you in your job? (If you haven’t got a job, how many of these things would you like to do?)

1 I work at a computer a lot of the time.
2 I do quite a lot of general paperwork.
3 I make a lot of phone calls.
4 I send faxes occasionally.
5 I show people around my workplace.
6 I arrange meetings.
7 I attend (= go to) quite a lot of meetings.
8 I have to write letters and reports.
9 I go to conferences.
Business and finance

Banks and businesses

Most businesses need to borrow money to finance (= pay for) investments (= things they need to buy in order to help the company, e.g. machines). The money they borrow from the bank is called a loan, and on this loan they have to pay interest, e.g. if you borrow £1,000 and the interest rate is 10%, then you have to pay back £1,000, plus £100 in interest.

Businesses and profit

One of the main aims/objectives (= the things that you hope to do/achieve) of a company is to make a profit (= earn/receive more money than it spends) (= make a loss). If a company does not make a profit or a loss, it breaks even.

Most companies are happy if they can break even in their first year of business.

Companies receive money from selling their products – this money is called the turnover. The money that they spend is called the expenditure (fml). They spend money on these things: raw materials (= materials in their natural state used to make something else, e.g. coal and oil are important raw materials used to make plastics); labour (= employees); overheads (= necessary costs for a company, e.g. rent for buildings, electricity, telephone)

Rise and fall

Business people often need to talk about the movement of sales, prices, interest rates, profit and loss, etc. Here are some of the words used to describe these trends (= movements):

- rise / go up / increase
- rise slowly (also gradually)
- rise sharply
- fall / go down
  (‘decrease’ is less common as a verb)
- fall slowly
- go down sharply

Note: rise, increase, and fall are also used as nouns: a slow rise in interest rates, a steady increase in sales, a sharp fall in profits, a dramatic (= sharp) rise in inflation. We can also use be up/down: prices are up by 10%; profits are down by £2m.

Businesses and the economy

In order to grow/expand (= get bigger) and thrive/prosper (= do well / be successful), many companies want or need the following:

- low inflation, so prices do not go up
- low interest rates, so the company can borrow money without paying a lot of interest
- economic and political stability (= things remain steady and stable and there are no sudden changes in the economic and political situation)
- a healthy/strong economy (= in good condition), and not an economy in recession (= in a period of reduced and slow business activity)
- tax cuts (= tax reductions / lower taxes), so they can keep more of their profit. This often depends on government expenditure, e.g. The government will not be able to reduce taxes if public expenditure continues to rise.
Exercises

67.1 What single word or phrase is being defined in each of these sentences?
1 Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
2 What you must pay the bank if you borrow money.
3 The continuous increase in the price of things.
4 The things you hope to do/achieve within a period of time.
5 When a company does not make a profit or a loss.
6 When an economy is in a period of reduced and slow business activity.

67.2 Replace the underlined word(s) in each sentence with another word that has the same meaning.
1 There has been a slow rise in sales.
2 This comes after a dramatic fall last year.
3 Fortunately the company is doing well now.
4 And it's growing very quickly.
5 This is one of their main objectives.
6 Profits have risen considerably.

67.3 Look at the graph and complete the sentences on the left with one word for each gap.
1 In 1993 sales ....................
2 In the following year they ....................
3 In 1995 there was a .................... in sales.
4 In 1996 business improved and there was a ....................
5 And in 1997 sales ....................
6 In the five-year period sales .................... by 40,000.

67.4 Fill the gaps to form compound words or common phrases.
1 .................... expenditure  3 tax ....................  5 raw ....................
2 .................... stability  4 .................... rate  6 profit and ....................

67.5 Can you answer these questions about your own country?
1 What is the current inflation rate?
2 If you borrowed $10,000 from your bank, what would the interest rate be approximately?
3 What is the state of the economy at the moment? Is it strong? Is it in recession?
4 Do you think businesses are optimistic about the future?
5 Has the government reduced company taxes or personal taxes in the last twelve months?
6 Has public expenditure risen or fallen in the last twelve months?
Sales and marketing

A What is marketing?

People talk about the marketing mix. This consists of (= it is formed from and includes): choosing the right product (= what a company produces/makes or offers) selling it at the right price (= what it costs to the buyer/consumer) using the right kind of promotion (= the ways to make the product popular and well-known; this includes advertising.) making it available in the right place (= where you sell the product and how it reaches the consumer; also known as distribution)

This ‘mix’ is often referred to as the four Ps, and marketing people have the job of matching these things to the needs of consumers (= the people who buy and use products). People who buy the products of a particular company are that company’s customers/clients.

B ‘Sales’ and ‘market’

There are a number of words which combine with sales and market to form compound nouns and word partnerships which are very common in marketing.

sales figures: the amount you have sold
sales target: the amount you would like to sell in a future period
sales forecast: the amount you think you will sell in a future period, e.g. next year
sales representative: a person who sells a company’s products; abbreviated to sales rep
sales/marketing manager: the person who runs the sales/marketing department
market research: collecting and studying information about what people want and need
market share: the % of a market that a company has, e.g. a 20% market share
market leader: the company or product with the biggest market share

C Competition

Ford Motors is the market leader in the UK car industry. Its main competitors (= the most important companies in the same market) are Vauxhall and Rover, and it has had to work very hard in recent years to maintain its market share. Every time a competitor launches a new product (= introduces a new car onto the market), it is harder for Ford to stay in front.

D A company’s image

The image of a product/company (= the picture or idea that people have of the product/company) is very important in sales and marketing. Some companies want a fashionable image (= modern and up-to-date), others do not. For example:

- mass-produced (= made in large numbers), reliable (= you can trust it), good value (= good for the money), functional but boring.
- young; exciting, glamorous (= exciting + attractive); often fashionable, dangerous; not very practical.
- high quality (= high standard/very good), luxury (= expensive and giving great comfort), high status/prestige (= important; driven by important people).
Exercises

68.1 The ‘marketing mix’ consists of the four Ps. Can you remember what they are? Write them down and then check on the opposite page.

68.2 See how many different compound words and word partnerships you can form from the words in the box (you can use a word more than once), then complete the definitions below.

sales market manager share figures marketing leader research department forecast

1 A sales ......................... is what you think you are going to sell during a future period.
2 The marketing ..................... will be responsible for all the activities in the marketing .....................
3 Sales ......................... tell you how much you have sold of a product.
4 The market ......................... is the company with the largest market ..................... in a particular market.
5 Market ......................... gives you information about what people want, need and buy.

68.3 What knowledge is necessary to be a good sales rep? Complete this text and then try to add a further sentence of your own.

First of all a good sales ......................... needs to have an excellent knowledge of their company’s .......................... Secondly, he or she needs to know all about the ......................... of their main .......................... Thirdly, a sales representative should be familiar with the needs of ......................... in their particular market, and should obviously be very familiar with the needs of their company’s most important .........................

68.4 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>................</td>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>prestige</td>
<td>................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>................</td>
<td>glamourous</td>
<td>luxury</td>
<td>reliable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>competition</td>
<td>...........</td>
<td></td>
<td>dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashion</td>
<td>...........</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

68.5 Which nouns or adjectives from the last exercise (or any others from section D on the opposite page), do you associate with these companies and products?

Rolex ................................................................. Benetton .................................................................
Coca Cola ......................................................... Sony .................................................................
Ferrari ................................................................. Levis .................................................................
Swatch ................................................................. mobile phones .................................................................

68.6 Can you answer these questions about your own country? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Which company is the market leader in the motor car industry in your country?
2 Do you know its approximate market share?
3 Which companies are its main competitors?
4 Write down the names of at least two cars that have been launched in the last six months.
Hobbies are activities that we do in our spare time (= free time).

A  Things people play

- cards
- board games
- chess
- guitar
- saxophone
- musical instruments

Note: People join clubs (= become members of clubs) where they can play cards and chess.

B  Things people collect

- stamps
- coins
- antiques

C  Outdoor activities

- hiking
- camping
- rock climbing
- hunting
- jogging

With these hobbies we can use two different verbs, go and do:
We often go camping in the summer. or I do a bit of / a lot of rock climbing in the summer.

D  Creative hobbies

- Caroline makes her own clothes. (= she makes clothes for herself; she doesn’t buy them)
- Barbara likes photography.
- Brigit is mad about (= really likes) DIY. (DIY = do-it-yourself)

Note: When we start a hobby for the first time we often use the phrasal verb take up, and when we stop doing the hobby for the final time, we often use the phrasal verb give up.
I took up golf when I was fifteen, but I gave it up last year.
Exercises

69.1 Without looking at the opposite page, write down:
1 three things that people often play
2 three things that people often collect
3 five outdoor hobbies which include some physical exercise

69.2 Here are some people talking about their hobbies. Can you guess what the hobby is in each case?
1 I usually use colour, but sometimes you get a better effect with black and white. It really depends on the subject.
2 I really enjoy going round the shops and markets looking for a bargain.
3 I try to practise every day, but sometimes it’s difficult because I don’t like to disturb my neighbours too much. And one neighbour gets very angry if I play the same thing over and over again.
4 The great thing is you can do it when you like. I usually do it three or four times a week – either early in the morning, or after school. I only go for about 25 minutes but it really keeps me fit.
5 Obviously it saves me a lot of money; and in any case, I hate buying things in boutiques because so many things are badly made.
6 I joined a club because I wanted to get better, and I now play twice a week in the evenings. It has helped me a lot and I have a much better memory for all the different moves and strategies.
7 I think this is a very common hobby for people like me, who have a house but don’t have much money. That’s why I started, but now I think I do a better job than many professionals.

69.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable verb.
1 How often do you .................. jogging?
2 She .................. hiking because she wanted to get more exercise. Unfortunately, she didn’t like it and she .................. it .................. about six months later.
3 She has always .................. her own clothes; it’s much cheaper than buying them.
4 He .................. old coins.
5 I .................. quite a lot of rock climbing when I’m on holiday.
6 I learnt to .................. the piano when I was at school.
7 I wanted to improve my chess, so I .................. a chess club.
8 I don’t really .................. anything in my spare time.

69.4 Answer these questions.
1 Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?
2 How long have you had this hobby?
3 Is it an expensive hobby?
4 Why do you like it?
5 How much time do you spend on your hobby?
6 Is it a common hobby in your country?
7 Write down three other common hobbies in your country.

If possible, ask another person these questions.
In English you normally play a game but do a lot of / a bit of sport: In the winter I do quite a lot of skiing; in the summer I play tennis and cricket.

**Ball games and equipment**

football (AmEng = soccer)  
basketball  
tennis  
squash  
rugby  
golf  
volleyball  
baseball  
table tennis  
cricket  
hockey

For most ball games you need boots or training shoes (trainers). For tennis, squash and badminton you need a racket. For baseball and table tennis you need a bat. For golf you need clubs. In tennis, volleyball and badminton there is a net across the middle of the court. There is also a net around each goal in football.

**Things you can do with a ball**

- throw it  
- head it  
- pass it  
- hit it  
- catch it  
- kick it

**Places and people**

The playing area for football, rugby, hockey and cricket is called a pitch; for tennis, volleyball, basketball, squash and badminton it is a court; for golf it is a course.

*Note:* When you describe the playing area for football and the area around for the crowd (= the people who watch, also called spectators), it is called a stadium, e.g. Wembley Stadium.

*Players:* Some games are played by individuals, others are team games. In a team, one player is the captain, and there is a manager (e.g. in football) or a coach (e.g. in basketball).

*Officials:* Football, rugby and hockey have a referee but tennis, cricket and baseball have an umpire. In football the referee has a whistle to control the game and two linesmen. In tennis there are line judges to decide if the ball is ‘in’ or ‘out’.

**Other sports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>athletics</td>
<td>track</td>
<td>vest, shorts, running shoes or spikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor racing</td>
<td>track</td>
<td>crash helmet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>pool</td>
<td>swimming costume (women); trunks (men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxing</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>vest, shorts, gloves, boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>slopes (piste)</td>
<td>sticks, ski suit, ski boots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

70.1 Write down six things you can do with a ball. Cover the opposite page first.

70.2 Write down:
1 five games where you can hit the ball (with various kinds of equipment).
2 four games where you can pass the ball.
3 three games where you can catch the ball.
4 two games where you can kick the ball.
5 one game where you can head the ball.

70.3 Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below? (You can put a word in more than one column if you wish.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>swimming</th>
<th>gloves</th>
<th>crash</th>
<th>helmet</th>
<th>course</th>
<th>football</th>
<th>racket</th>
<th>track</th>
<th>ring</th>
<th>boots</th>
<th>pool</th>
<th>motor</th>
<th>racing</th>
<th>clubs</th>
<th>tennis</th>
<th>net</th>
<th>court</th>
<th>golf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>track</td>
<td>trunks</td>
<td>boxing</td>
<td>goals</td>
<td>costume</td>
<td>shorts</td>
<td>whistle</td>
<td>vest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sport</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

70.4 True or false? If false, correct the sentence to make it true.
1 The people who watch a football match are the audience.
2 The official who gives the score in tennis is the umpire.
3 Athletes wear shorts.
4 You need a stick to play hockey.
5 Boxers wear gloves.
6 Tennis is played on a pitch.
7 The referee in football has a whistle.
8 Women wear trunks for swimming.

70.5 Answer these questions. If possible, ask a friend the same questions.
1 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page that you watch but don’t play? If so, what are they and where do you watch them?
2 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page you play/do yourself? If so, which?
3 Are there any that you are good at?
4 Are there any that you hate?
5 Are there any that are not played much in your country?
6 Which game or sport is the most popular in your country?
7 Which game or sport on the opposite page is the most dangerous in your opinion?
8 Which game or sport requires the most strength?
9 Which one has the biggest crowds?
10 Can you write down at least three more games/sports not included opposite.
Sport 2: winning, losing, and scoring

Winning and losing

Notice how these key words are used:
Spain beat Switzerland 3–2. (= Switzerland lost to Spain 3–2) In other words:
Spain won the match. (= Switzerland lost the match)
Spain defeated Switzerland. (= Switzerland were defeated by Spain)
Spain were the winners. (= Switzerland were the losers)

If both teams or players have the same score (= number of goals or points), it is a draw (e.g. 2–2 is a draw). We can also use draw as a verb, e.g. we drew yesterday’s match/game 2–2.

Note: A match is used for an organised game: We had a game of football with a few friends in the park, but we’ve got an important match against a very good team next week.

When the game is still in progress, we often use the verb lead to describe the position of the teams and players, or latest to describe the score:

HALF-TIME SCORE: SPAIN 2 SWITZERLAND 1
At half-time, Spain are leading Switzerland two–one. (= the latest score is two–one to Spain)
Sampras is leading three–two in the first set. (= the latest score is three–two to Sampras)

What's the score?

In most games you score goals (e.g. football, hockey) or points (e.g. table tennis, basketball). At the end of the game there is a result (= players/teams win, lose, or draw).
However, the scoring system – and the way we describe it – is different from game to game.

Football
Spain 0–0 Italy (we say nil–nil)
Spain 1–0 Italy (one-nil to Spain)
Spain 1–1 Italy (one–all)
Spain 1–2 Italy (two–one to Italy)
Spain 2–2 Italy (two–all)

Tennis
15–0 (fifteen–love)
30–0 (thirty–love)
30–30 (thirty–all)
40–40 (deuce) [pronounced like ‘juice’]

If the final score is 2–2 in a cup match, you may have to play extra time. And if the score is still 2–2 at the end of extra time, there is a penalty shoot-out.

Game X
Game and set to X (e.g. 6–3 or 7–5)

If the score reaches 6–6 you have a tie-break to decide the set.

Competitions

In many sports, players and teams play every week in a league (the player/team that wins the most games in a season is the winner of the league championship). In most sports, there is also a cup competition, which is usually a knock-out competition.
Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from the previous unit.

71.1 Complete the table with the correct forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lead</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>catch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>draw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

71.2 How do we say these scores?
1 Football: 0–0 2–1 4–4
2 Tennis: 15–0 40–30 40–40

71.3 Fill the gaps in these texts with suitable words or phrases.

In the World Cup Final of 1994, Brazil [1]... Italy 3–2 in a [2]... shoot-out. After ninety minutes the [3]... was 0–0; and it remained the same after thirty minutes of [4]..., but then Italy [5]... 3–2 in the penalty shoot-out after Baresi and Baggio both missed. This was the fourth time that Brazil had [6]... the World Cup. Ivanisevic [7]... to Sampras in the second round. He [8]... the first [9]... 6–4, but then [10]... the second [11]... on a [12]...
After that, Sampras dominated the rest of the [13]... and won easily. The final [14]... was 4–6, 7–6, 6–1, 6–2.

71.4 True or false? Check your answers by looking back at this unit and the previous unit.
1 Brazil won the football World Cup in 1994.
2 Football has an umpire.
3 A set in tennis is always decided on a tie-break.
4 If two teams have the same score at the end of the game, it is a draw.
5 Golf is played on a course.
6 If someone gives you the latest score, the game has finished.
7 Sticks are used in skiing and hockey.
8 In a knock-out competition, you can lose one or two games but still win the competition.

71.5 Which sport is being described in each sentence? (The underlined words are key words and you can look them up to increase your vocabulary in different sports.)
1 The referee gave the try although many people thought it was a forward pass.
2 He scored the winner with a beautiful free kick from just outside the penalty area.
3 He served fifteen aces and not one double fault.
4 The coach called a time out with just 45 seconds left and two points between the teams.
5 He crashed into the car in front with just two laps remaining.
6 First he was booked (= the yellow card) for a bad tackle, and then he handled the ball inside the penalty area, so the referee had to send him off (= the red card).
7 In the 200 metres freestyle, he overtook the Russian on the final length to win the race.
8 She sprinted away from the rest of the field on the final lap and won easily.
Cinema and theatre

At the theatre you can see plays, e.g. *Hamlet* by Shakespeare, or musicals, e.g. *Phantom of the Opera* by Andrew Lloyd Webber. In a play the cast (= the total number of actors) is usually quite small, but musicals often have a very large cast.

One difference between the theatre and cinema is that you usually book (= reserve) tickets in advance (= some time before the actual performance) if you are going to the theatre.

Another difference is that the audience (= the people watching the play/musical) clap at the end of the performance. This does not usually happen (in Britain) at the end of a film.

Plays are performed on stage, films are shown on screen. In your country, films in English are either shown with subtitles (= there is a translation across the bottom of the screen), or they are dubbed (= the English is removed and replaced by actors speaking in your own language).

Films are set (= take place) in many different periods and places, e.g. *Room with a View* is set in the early part of the 20th century; *Blade Runner* is set in the future. And when people talk about films, they often talk about the director, e.g. Spielberg, Bertolucci; and the stars, the most important actors and actresses, e.g. Tom Hanks and Jodie Foster.

**Types of film**

- **western**: a film about America in the 19th century; often with cowboys and indians
- **war film**, e.g. *Born on the 4th of July*
- **horror film**, e.g. *Dracula; Frankenstein*
- **science fiction film**: about the future
- **action film**, e.g. *Indiana Jones*
- **comedy**: a funny film that makes you laugh
- **thriller**: an exciting story often about a crime

**Describing plays and films**

Journalists write articles in which they give their opinion of new films and plays. They are called critics, and their articles are called reviews. These are some words they may use:

- **moving**: producing strong emotions, often of sadness; a positive word
- **violent**: includes lots of scenes with fighting and death
- **powerful**: has a big effect on our emotions
- **gripping**: exciting and very interesting
- **good fun**: used to describe a film that may not be very serious or important but is enjoyable
- **slow**: boring
### Exercises

**72.1** Look at the picture of your visit to the theatre and answer these questions.

1. Did you sit in the stalls or circle?
2. Which row were you in?
3. Were you next to an aisle?
4. Did you have a good view of the stage?

**72.2** What word or phrase is being defined?

1. A play or film in which part of the story is sung to music.
2. The total number of actors in a play or film.
3. The people who watch a play at the theatre.
4. What these people do with their hands at the end of a play.
5. The person who makes a film.
6. Journalists who write articles about films and plays.
7. The name of the articles they write.
8. The translation of the story of a film across the bottom of the screen.
9. To reserve tickets before the performance.
10. The most important actors or actresses in a film.

**72.3** Have you seen these famous films made in English over the last twenty years? If so, try to complete the rest of the table using words from the opposite page. Then write in the titles of three more films you have seen and complete the rest of the table for it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Film</th>
<th>Type of film</th>
<th>Subtitles or dubbed?</th>
<th>Description of film (adjectives)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>Dirty Harry</em> with Clint Eastwood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>Blade Runner</em> with Harrison Ford</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><em>Four Weddings and a Funeral</em> with Hugh Grant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><em>Schindler’s List</em> with Liam Neeson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><em>Dances with Wolves</em> with Kevin Costner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
73 Music, art and literature

A Forms and people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>composer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>songwriter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop/rock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Art</td>
<td>painter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sculpture</td>
<td>sculptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>novelist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the novel</td>
<td>short story writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short stories</td>
<td>poet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poetry</td>
<td>dramatist/playwright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Music

Classical music: e.g. Beethoven's piano concertos, Schubert's symphonies. Beethoven and Schubert are both composers (= people who write classical music) and most of their music is played by an orchestra (= large group of musicians including violins, cellos, etc.) which is led by a conductor, e.g. Georg Solti or Loren Maazel, as leader.

Opera (= a play in which the words are sung): e.g. La Bohème by Puccini, Carmen by Bizet.

Rock and pop music: e.g. U2, Bon Jovi, Maria Carey. This music is played by groups/bands, e.g. Bon Jovi, Simply Red; or solo artists, e.g. Madonna. Many solo artists, e.g. Phil Collins, are singer-songwriters (= they write and perform/play their own songs).

Jazz: e.g. Duke Ellington, Miles Davis, Stan Getz.

C Musical instruments and musicians

D Art

If you want to see the paintings of a famous artist, you need to go to an art gallery or museum. There you can see individual paintings and sometimes an exhibition (= a collection of paintings by one painter or school of painters, e.g. the Impressionists), e.g.

There’s a Monet exhibition at the National Gallery next week.

There are many different types and styles of painting:

a portrait (= a painting of a person)
a self-portrait (= a painting of the artist by himself/herself)
a landscape (= a painting of part of the countryside)
an abstract painting (= a painting that is not realistic)
Exercises

73.1 What are or were these people? (painter? sculptor? novelist? poet? dramatist? songwriter? composer? conductor? rock star? pop star? musician? singer? pianist? etc.) Some of them may be more than one of these things.

1 Leo Tolstoy         7 Giuseppe Verdi         13 Henry Moore
2 William Wordsworth 8 Mick Jagger          14 Jorge Luis Borges
3 Henrik Ibsen        9 Milton Nascimento  15 Pablo Picasso
4 Yukio Mishima       10 Paul Tortelier     16 Saki
5 Anton Chekhov       11 Paul Simon         17 Leonard Bernstein
6 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart 12 Mark Knopfler  18 Alberto Giacometti

73.2 What do you call the people who play the following instruments?
piano guitar drums violin cello flute

73.3 What types of painting are these?

1
2

73.4 Use the context and your own knowledge to fill the gaps in these sentences and dialogues.

1 He used to be conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic .................
2 Phil Collins was in a famous .................. called Genesis before he became a

.............................................*

3 A: Do you like .................. music?
   B: Yes, very much.
   A: And who’s your favourite ...................?
   B: It’s hard to say, but I love Bach and Vivaldi.
4 There’s going to be an .................. of his paintings at the new art ..................
5 She used to .................. her own songs but now she mainly .................. material
   written by other people.
6 I haven’t been to the .................. since I saw The Marriage of Figaro last year.
7 I think The Great Gatsby is Scott Fitzgerald’s best ..................
8 His first .................. was performed in a very small theatre.
Newspapers

A Background

In Britain, most newspapers are daily (= they come out / are published every day); a few only come out on Sundays. Magazines are usually weekly (= they come out every week), or monthly (= published every month).

Some newspapers are tabloids (= small in size) e.g. The Mirror; others are called broadsheets (= larger in size) e.g. The Times. In general, the tabloids represent the popular press (short articles and lots of pictures) and the broadsheets represent the quality press (longer articles and more ‘serious’). The largest circulation (= number of readers) is The Sun.

B Contents

Most British papers contain the following:
- home news (= news about Britain)
- foreign/international news (= news about other countries)
- business news
- sports news
- features (= longer articles about special subjects, e.g. a famous person or a political issue)
- radio and TV programmes
- weather forecast (= tells you what the weather will be like)
- reviews (= when film, theatre and music critics write about new films, plays and records, and give their opinion of them)

C People

Editor: the person in control of the daily production.

Reporters/journalists: people who report news and write articles; many journalists are freelance (= they work for themselves and are not employed by the newspaper).

D Headlines

Certain words (usually very short) are often used in newspaper headlines. Here are some:
- row (pronounced like ‘cow’) (= an argument)
- quit (= to leave a job)
- bid (n, v) (= an effort / a try / an attempt)
- cut (v, n) (= to reduce / make less)
- back (= to support)
- hit (= to affect badly)
- talks (= discussions)
- key (= very important)

E ‘It said in the paper that …’

When we refer to something in a newspaper we can use the verb say (NOT write), or the expression according to:

It says in The Times that they’ve found the missing girl.

According to The Guardian, the missing girl was found last night.
Exercises

74.1 Think about newspapers in your own country. Answer these questions.

1. How many daily national newspapers are there?
2. How many are tabloids?
3. Are any of the ‘quality’ papers in tabloid form?
4. How many broadsheets are there?
5. How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
6. Which newspaper has the largest circulation?
7. Can you name at least one editor of a daily paper; and two or three famous journalists who write for daily or weekly papers?
8. How often do you read the newspaper? How often do you buy a newspaper?

74.2 Explain these headlines in your own words. Do not use the underlined words.

1. Minister to quit
2. Government cuts spending on new hospitals
3. New bid to cut teenage smoking
4. Bad weather hits farmers
5. Germany back US plan
6. Ministers in tax row
7. POLICE DISCOVER KEY WITNESS
8. Japan and US enter fresh talks

74.3 Buy two different newspapers (in English or your own language) and complete this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Paper 1 (no. of pages)</th>
<th>Paper 2 (no. of pages)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>home news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign/international news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feature articles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the same two papers complete this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Paper 1 (yes/no)</th>
<th>Paper 2 (yes/no)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weather forecast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cartoons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crossword</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio and TV programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reviews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How many pages are left? What are they about? If possible, compare answers with a friend.
Television

A. Operating a television

- plug it in
- turn it on (= turn it off)
- remote control

You may also want to turn it up (= increase the volume because you can’t hear) (= turn it down); and turn over (= change to a different channel, e.g. from 1 to 3)

Note: You can also say switch on, switch off, or switch over (but not switch it up/down).

B. Types of programme

Here are some types of TV programme:

- Soap opera: a programme often on two or three times a week, which follows the lives of a group/community of people; the stories are often exciting, dramatic and hard to believe.
- Quiz show or Game show: individuals, teams or families who answer questions or play different games against each other. The winner gets a prize, e.g. a car, a holiday, money.
- Chat show: a programme where a presenter talks to famous people about their lives and careers; sometimes there is music as well.
- Documentary: a film with factual information, often analysing a problem in society.
- A series: a number of programmes about the same situation or the same characters in different situations. This may be a comedy series (the programmes are intended to be funny), or a drama series (the programmes are intended to be exciting, with interesting characters and situations).
- Current affairs programme: a programme about a current social/political problem. Current means that it is happening ‘now / at the present time’.

C. TV in Great Britain

At the moment there are five ‘terrestrial’ channels (or stations) on TV (BBC 1, BBC 2, ITV, Channel 4, and Channel 5). If you pay extra, you can have a satellite dish and receive satellite TV; or pay to have cable TV – there are many channels available.

D. Talking TV

Here are some useful words and phrases connected with television:

- What’s on TV tonight? (= what programmes are showing on TV tonight?)
- What time’s the film on? (= what time does it start?)
- How long do the commercials last? (= the advertisements between programmes)
- What’s your favourite programme? (= the programme you like most/best)
- Are they showing the game live (= as it happens) or just recorded highlights? (= parts of the game after it has been played, e.g. later in the day/evening)
- How much is a TV licence? (= money you have to pay the government if you have a TV)
75.1 You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below? Look at the example first.

Example: You want to watch a programme on TV. Could you turn the TV on?...

1. You can't hear the programme very well. Could you ...?
2. You want to watch a different programme. Could you ...?
3. Now it's too loud for you. Could you ...?
4. You don't want to watch any more. Could you ...?

75.2 Here is part of an evening from three British TV channels. Can you find at least one example of: a documentary, a quiz show, a game show, a drama series, and a current affairs programme? There is also one example of a comedy series and two soap operas. Can you guess which programmes they might be?

7.00 Telly Addicts
Noel Edmonds hosts the quiz in which teams have their television knowledge put to the test.

7.30 Watchdog
Anne Robinson presents the stories that affect consumers in the 1990s. With Alice Beer and reporters Chris Choi and Johnathan Maitland.

8.00 EastEnders
Kathy tries to come to terms with Ted's revelations. Michelle receives a letter that could change her life.
For cast see Tuesday
Stereo Subtitled ...............5500

8.30 2 Point 4 Children
The Deep. There's something fishy going on when Bill and Ben are asked to look after their neighbour's house.

9.00 Nine O'Clock News
With Peter Sissons.
Subtitled
Regional News
Weather Rob McElwee ...........3245

7.00 The Krypton Factor
Four new contestants compete for a place in the November final.
Director Tony Prescott; Producer Wayne Garvie
Stereo Subtitled ...............5448

7.30 Coronation Street
It's farewell time at the Rovers. Episode written by Stephen Mallatrat.
Forcast see Wednesday. Repeated on Wednesday at 1.25pm. Subtitled ....239

8.00 Bruce's Price Is Right
Game show testing knowledge of the price of consumer goods.
Director Bill Morton; Producer Howard Huntridge
Stereo Subtitled ...............2968

8.30 World in Action
In a classroom fitted with cameras, World in Action reveals what is really going on in Britain's overcrowded schools and asks who is to blame.

9.00 New series

Cracker

Brotherly Love (part 1).
In the first of this three-part thriller, a prostitute is found raped and murdered, opening old wounds at the station. See today's choices.

7.00 Channel 4 News
Presented by Jon Snow and Cathy Smith. Including Weather.
Subtitled ...............829535

7.55 The Slot
The daily soapbox offering viewers the chance to air their opinions.
Stereo ...............141603

8.00 New series
Desperately Seeking Something
A four-part series in which Pete McCarthy explores the strange universe of alternative beliefs.

8.30 Baby It's You
Continuing the six-part series which uses natural history filming techniques to observe the first two years of a baby's life.

9.00 Cutting Edge

The Trouble with Money

Strange though it seems to some, not everyone enjoys winning the lottery. This documentary explores the joys and pitfalls of getting rich quick.

75.3 Answer these questions about TV in your own country.

1. How many terrestrial channels are there?
2. Do you watch satellite TV and/or cable TV?
3. In total, how much TV do you watch every week?
4. What are your favourite programmes on TV at the moment?
5. What night are they on?
6. Do you enjoy watching the commercials?
7. Do you often watch football matches live on TV? If not, do you watch the highlights?
8. Do you need a TV licence in your country? If so, how much is it?
On the phone

A Starting a phone conversation

The first example is an informal situation; the second example is a more formal call.

A: Hello.
B: Is that Mary? [NOT Are you Mary? or Is it Mary?]
A: Yeah.
B: Hi. It’s Ruth. [NOT I am Ruth, or Here is Ruth]

Note: When British people answer the phone at home they usually just say ‘hello’ and sometimes they also give their number. They do not give their name.

C: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.
D: Oh good morning. Could I speak to Mrs Gordon, please?
C: Yes. Who’s calling, please?
D: My name is Paul Scott. (This is usually how you introduce yourself in a formal situation.)
C: Right, Mr Scott. I’ll put you through. (= I will connect you with Mrs Gordon)

B Telephone problems

4.20 p.m. You try to phone your sister Susan but the line is engaged (= the line is busy). In other words, someone is already on the phone (= using the phone).

4.30 p.m. You phone your sister again but it’s the wrong number (= you have dialled another number, e.g. 637 424 and not 627 424, and a stranger answers).

4.35 p.m. You get through to your sister’s number (= make contact) but she’s out (= not at home). Her husband answers and says that Susan won’t be back (= will not return) for a couple of hours, so you leave a message, e.g. Could you ask Susan to ring me when she gets back? The husband agrees to give Susan the message.

7.30 p.m. Susan phones you back but you are out. She leaves a message on your answerphone. Her message is: Jean, this is Susan. I’m just returning your call (= phone call). I’ll give you a ring (= phone you) tomorrow.

C Useful vocabulary

A reverse charge call (AmEng = collect call). This is when the person you ring agrees to pay for the phone call. If you make a reverse charge call, you must go through the operator.

If you have someone’s name and address, you can call Directory Enquiries to get their phone number. If you phone another town or city, you need to know the code, e.g. the code for Cambridge is 01223. This type of call is a long distance call (= a local call).
Exercises

76.1 Write down five words or expressions including the word 'phone' or 'telephone'.

76.2 Fill the gaps in these phone conversations with suitable words or phrases.

A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?
B: Yes. I'm Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr Patterson. He actually left a message on my answerphone yesterday afternoon.
A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Patterson is out at the moment. Can I ask him to call later?
B: Yes please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My number is 748 7267.

B: Hello?
A: Hello?
B: Hi, Sandra?
A: No, sorry. I'm Sandra's colleague from work.
B: Oh.
A: Do you know when she'll be back?
B: No, I've no idea.
A: OK. Well in that case, could I ask her to this evening, please?
B: Sure. What's your name?
A: Right. I'll tell her.
B: Thanks very much. Bye bye.
A: Bye.

C: Hello?
B: Hello?
C: Carlos?
A: Yeah, speaking.
B: Hi Carlos. Serena.
A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring yesterday.
B: I did – or at least I tried. I your number about six times last night but I couldn't. It was all the time.
A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I the phone to my brother for about an hour and then someone from school rang me about the table tennis tournament next week.
B: Oh well, never mind. Anyway I'm phoning about ...

76.3 Can you answer these questions?

1 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?
2 Is there a Directory Enquiries? What number is it?
3 From your country, what's the dialling code for the United Kingdom?
4 How much does it cost to make a local call?
5 How often do you have to pay your phone bill?
6 Is it cheaper to phone during the night?
7 What's the phone number of your English school?
8 Have you ever made a reverse charge call? If so, who was it to?

If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone from the same country.
Computers

A Hardware

As well as the hardware (= the machines), you also need software (= the programs needed to work the machines). These programs are on disks, e.g. the hard disk inside the computer, or floppy disks or on CD-ROMs (= Compact Disc Read Only Memory, a CD on which you can put a large amount of information).

B Operating a computer

Using the mouse, you can do a number of things by clicking on different icons (= moving the mouse to point at different pictures at the top of the screen).

- open a new document
- open an existing document
- save the data in this document
- print
- cut
- copy
- paste

C What do people use computers for?

A word processor is a computer used to prepare documents or letters, or the software that is used for this purpose. Many people use their computers for word processing, e.g. writing letters and reports. A lot of business people use spreadsheets (= a program used to enter and arrange numbers and financial information) and databases (= programs which allow you to store, look at or change a large amount of information quickly and easily). Some people also use graphics (= the pictures and symbols a computer program can produce).

D Important vocabulary

More and more people are becoming computer-literate (= have experience of working with computers and know how to use them) as many programs and machines are so user-friendly (= easy to use). You can now connect your computer to computers all over the world using the Internet (= a system that allows computers to connect using telephone lines). People send each other e-mail (electronic mail) messages using this system or network.

If your computer is slow it may need more memory. It may crash (= stop working) if there is not enough memory or if it has a bug (= a software problem; also a virus). Make sure you make a back-up copy of your work (= an extra copy on a floppy disk).
Exercises

77.1 Add another word, abbreviation, or part of a word, to complete common ‘computer’ words and phrases.

1 soft............ 7 a computer............... 12 ..........-mail
2 a word ............. 8 ..........-ROM
3 floppy............. 9 laser............... 11 spread...........
4 ..........-friendly
5 ..........-literate
6 key.............

77.2 Can you remember what these symbols mean?

1  
2  
3  

77.3 Complete this text about using a computer for word processing.

I wrote a report on the (1) __________ this morning. When I finished, I (2) __________ out two copies – one for me and one for my boss. Then, without any warning, the computer went (3) __________, and I’m afraid I lost the whole document. This is very unusual because normally I (4) __________ the data while I’m writing and then make a (5) __________ copy when I have finished; this morning I forgot.

Anyway, I gave the report to my boss, hoping that she would not ask me to change it in any way. She did. She thought it was a bit long and said it would be better if I used more (6) __________ to illustrate some of the written information. She also thought it would make the report look more attractive.

I went back and rewrote most of the report when the computer was OK, only I (7) __________ part of the middle section which was rather repetitive, and I added extra (8) __________ as my boss advised. It did look better by the time I’d finished, and this time I remembered to (9) __________ it and make a (10) __________ copy.

77.4 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Do you have a computer at home? If so, what is it?
2 Do you use computers at school/college/university/work? If so, what type?
3 What do you use them for?
4 Would you say you are computer-literate?
5 Do you find most computers user-friendly?
6 What software programs are you familiar with?
7 Do you use e-mail?
8 Have you used CD-ROM? If so, what programs did you use and why?
9 Do you think ‘The Internet’ will have an important influence on our daily lives? Do you think it will be important in helping people from different countries to learn English?
A  The system
Most children in England and Wales follow this route in the state system (= free education).

Age
3  some go to nursery school
5  everyone starts primary school
11 pupils go to a secondary school (AmEng = high school). This may be a comprehensive (= mixed ability) or a grammar school (= children selected for their academic ability)
16  they leave school and get a job, or go to a college for vocational (= job) training, e.g. hotel management, secretarial courses; or stay at school for two more years  go to university
18  they leave school and get a job or  go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching, business studies.

Note:
• You go to school (as a pupil to study) and go to university (as a student to study). You don't use the definite article 'the' here. Other expressions like this are go to bed (to sleep); go into hospital (when you are ill); go to church (to pray / to worship).
• In some areas of the UK there are not many grammar schools.
• There are also public schools. In fact, these are private, and parents pay to send their children there. Some are expensive. About 5% of the population go to public schools.

B  A school timetable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson 1</th>
<th>MON</th>
<th>TUES</th>
<th>WED</th>
<th>THURS</th>
<th>FRI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Religious Education</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Social Education</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Visual Art</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(break)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 2</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>Science</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Science</td>
<td>Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 3</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>Physical Education (PE)</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lunch)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 4</td>
<td>Maths*</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>Information Technology</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 5</td>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Visual Art</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Maths is an abbreviation of mathematics.

As you can see, the pupils have five lessons every day, and altogether they do (= study) eleven subjects a week plus Physical Education (PE). Every morning they have a twenty-minute break. There are three terms (= periods of continuous work) in a school year, and the timetable changes every year.

Note: Some words in English which end in ‘s’ look plural, but in fact they are singular: Maths isn't my favourite subject, and physics is very difficult.
Most nouns of this type refer to subjects; other examples are economics and politics.
Exercises

78.1 Here are some school subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?

Example: MGREAN  German

1 TAHMS ..........................  6 EHGORAGPY ..........................
2 IRTHOSY ..........................  7 RAT ..........................
3 CNECEI ..........................  8 SIMCU ..........................
4 NISGEHL ..........................  9 EHNFCR ..........................
5 HOGTCEYNLO ..........................  10 NEOCCIOSM ..........................

78.2 How much can you remember? Try to answer these questions or complete the sentences without looking at the opposite page.

1 At what age do children go to nursery school?
2 At what age do they start primary school?
3 When they go to secondary school it is either a grammar school or a ..........................
4 At what age can English and Welsh children leave school?
5 According to the timetable the foreign languages studied is .................
6 Not including PE, how many subjects do the children do?
7 What happens if children fail all the exams they take at the age of 16?
8 What can they do if they pass all their exams at the age of 18?

78.3 What about you and your country? Answer these questions.

1 Did you go to nursery school?
2 Do most children start primary school at the age of five?
3 Is the secondary school system similar or different?
4 How many subjects did/do you study at secondary school?
5 Did/do you study any subjects which are not included opposite?
6 What was/is your favourite subject?
7 How many lessons did/do you have every day?
8 Is/was your school a state school or public school?
9 At what age can you leave school?
10 How many terms are there in a school year?

78.4 Complete these sentences with the correct expression.

1 When she was a child she went ......................... in a small village with only fifty other pupils.
2 He didn't go to school last term because he was very ill and he had to go .........................
3 I was very tired, so after I finished my homework I went .........................
4 When I left school I went ......................... and studied medicine.
5 It was a religious school, so we had to go ......................... quite a lot.

78.5 The next unit is about university and further education. Can you think of six subjects you can study at university which you do not usually study at school? Write down your answers, then turn to the next page.
Subjects

You can normally do/study these subjects at university but not always at school:

- medicine
- law
- philosophy
- engineering
- psychology
- sociology
- architecture
- politics
- business studies
- agriculture
- history of art

Note: The underlined letters in some of the words above show the syllable with the main stress. Also note that the first syllable of psychology is pronounced /sai/ like 'my'.

Studying at (a British) university

If you want to go to (= enter fml) university, you must first pass examinations that most students take at the age of eighteen (called ‘A’ levels). Most students take three ‘A’ levels (three examinations in three different subjects) and they must do well in order to get/obtain a place at university because the places are limited. At the moment, approximately 30% of young adults go to university in Britain.

If you get a place at university, the tuition (= the teaching) is free, and some students also get (= receive) a grant (= money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and accommodation) as well. Students at university are called undergraduates while they are studying for their first degree.

Most university courses last (= go on for / continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, may be even longer. During this period students can say that they are doing/studying history, or doing / studying for a degree in history, for example. When they finish the course and pass their examinations, they receive a degree (the qualification when you complete a university course successfully). This can be a BA (= Bachelor of Arts) or a BSc (= Bachelor of Science), e.g. I have a friend who has a BA in history, and another who has a BSc in chemistry.

Postgraduate courses

When you complete your first degree, you are a graduate. (In the US, students also use this word as a verb and say, they ‘graduated in history’ or ‘graduated in chemistry’, for example.) Some students then go on to do a second course or degree (postgraduate course / postgraduate degree). These students are then postgraduates. There are usually three possible degrees:

- MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science); usually one year
- MPhil (Master of Philosophy); usually two years
- PhD (Doctor of Philosophy); at least three years

When people study one subject in great detail (often to find new information), we say they are conducting / doing / carrying out research (U); e.g.

I'm doing some research into/on the languages of different African tribes.

School vs. university

At school, you have teachers and lessons, at university, you have lecturers and lectures. When a lecturer gives/does a lecture, the students listen and take/make notes (= write down the important information), but do not usually say much, except to ask occasional questions.
**Exercises**

79.1 Read these sentences spoken by university students. What is each person studying?

1. We have to know every bone in a person’s body.
2. I’m concentrating on the modernist style and the work of Le Corbusier and Frank Lloyd Wright.
3. The way we use fertilizers is much more precise than twenty years ago.
4. We’re going to concentrate on Freud and Jung this term.
5. I’ve been reading some books on time management.
6. Expressionism was really a reaction to the work of the Impressionists.
7. We’ve spent a lot of time on American foreign policy and how it has been affected by various domestic problems.
8. You must know this case – it’s one of the most famous in legal history.

Now mark the stress on each of your answers, check with the answer key, and practise saying the words.

79.2 What do you call:

1. the money some students receive if they get a place at university?
2. the qualification you get at the end of university?
3. the name we give students during this period at university?
4. teachers at university?
5. students when they have completed their first degree?
6. students studying for a second degree?
7. the study of one subject in great depth and detail, often to get new information?
8. the talks that students go to while they are at university?

79.3 Replace the underlined verbs with different verbs that have the same meaning in the context.

1. Who is giving the lecture today?
2. Did she receive a grant for her course?
3. Is it more difficult to obtain a place at university?
4. You have to pass the exams before you can enter university.
5. He’s studying physics, I think.
6. I think they’re carrying out some research into the cause of asthma.
7. I didn’t take any notes in the lecture yesterday.
8. The course goes on for three years.

79.4 How similar is university education in your own country? Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else from your own country and/or someone from a different country.

1. Do you need to pass examinations before you can go to university?
2. Do some students get a grant to study at university?
3. Is the tuition free if you go to university?
4. Do most students go to university at the age of 18 or 19?
5. Do more students go to university in your country than in Britain?
6. Do most degree courses last three years?
7. What is your equivalent of the British BA or BSc?
8. Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?
A The police

They do a number of things. When someone commits a crime (= breaks the law and does something wrong / illegal / against the law) the police must investigate (= try to find out what happened / who is responsible). If they find the person responsible for the crime, they arrest them (= take them to the police station). At the police station, they question them (= ask them questions to find out what they know) and if they are sure the person committed the crime, the person is charged with the crime (= the police make an official statement that they believe the person committed the crime). The person must then go to court for trial.

B The court

In court, the person charged with the crime (now called the defendant or accused) must try to prove (= provide facts to show something is true) that they did not commit the crime; in other words prove that they are innocent (= guilty). The jury listens to all the evidence (= information about the crime, for and against the defendant) and then makes their decision.

C Punishment

If the defendant is convicted of the crime (= the jury decides that the defendant is guilty), the judge will give the sentence (= the punishment). For example, if a person is convicted of murder, the sentence will be many years in prison. The person then becomes a prisoner, and the room they live in is called a cell.

For crimes that are not serious (often called minor offences, e.g. illegal parking), the punishment is usually a fine (= money you have to pay).
Exercises

80.1 Put this story in the correct order.
1 they found both men guilty.
2 and charged them with the robbery.
3 £10,000 was stolen from a bank in the High Street.
4 After the jury had listened to all the evidence
5 They were sent to prison for seven years.
6 The trial took place two months later.
7 and they finally arrested two men.
8 They questioned them at the police station
9 The police questioned a number of people about the crime

80.2 Answer the questions.
1 Who investigates crimes?
2 Who sentences people?
3 Who live in cells?
4 Who decides if someone is innocent or guilty?
5 Who defend people and present evidence?
6 Who commit crimes?

80.3 Fill the gaps with suitable words.
1 I have never ................ the law and ................... a crime.
2 In Britain it is ...................... the law to drive a car without insurance.
3 If you park illegally you will have to pay a ......................
4 The police were fairly sure the man committed the crime, but they knew it would be
difficult to ...................... it in court.
5 The jury must decide if the accused is innocent or ......................
6 In order to reach their decision, the jury must listen carefully to the ......................
7 If the accused is ...................... of murder, the ...................... may be at least ten years in
prison.
8 He has been in trouble with the police once before, but it was only a minor ......................

80.4 Read this short story, then write down your response to the questions below, based on your
knowledge of the law in your own country.

Two fifteen-year-old boys broke into a house in the middle of the day when the owner was out, and took money and
jewellery worth about £900. The owner reported the crime to the police when she returned home at 6 p.m.

1 Will the police investigate this crime?
2 How will they investigate? What will they do?
3 Do you think the police will catch the two boys?
4 If they do, what crime will they be charged with?
5 Can the boys be sent to prison?
6 What do you think the sentence would be? Do you think this is the correct sentence?

Compare your answers with the answer key (based on the situation in the United Kingdom).
If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.
Crime

A  Against the law

If you do something illegal (= wrong / against the law), then you have committed a crime. Most people commit a crime at some time in their lives, e.g. driving above the speed limit, parking illegally, stealing sweets from a shop when they were children, etc.

B  Crimes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crime</th>
<th>Criminal (= person)</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>theft (= general word for stealing)</td>
<td>thief</td>
<td>steal (also take)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robbery (= steal from people or places)</td>
<td>robber</td>
<td>rob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burglary (= break into a shop/house and steal things)</td>
<td>burglar</td>
<td>burgle / break into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoplifting (= steal from shops when open)</td>
<td>shoplifter</td>
<td>shoplift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder (= kill someone by intention)</td>
<td>murderer</td>
<td>murder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manslaughter (= kill someone by accident)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rape (= force someone to have sex)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>rape</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C  Crime prevention

What can governments do to fight crime (= take action to stop crime)? These things happen in some countries, although many people may think they are not a good idea.

Police carry (= have) guns.
Police are allowed to (= are permitted to) stop anyone in the street and question them.

The courts give tougher punishments for crimes committed than in the past (e.g. bigger fines or longer prison sentences than in the past).

There is capital punishment (= death, e.g. by electric chair or hanging) for some crimes.

What can individuals do to prevent a crime from happening (= stop a crime happening)? Here are things some people do to protect themselves and their property (= home and land), although you may not think they are all a good idea.

Don’t walk along dark streets late at night (e.g. midnight) on your own (= alone).

Lock all doors and windows when you go out.
Don’t wear expensive jewellery.
Leave lights on at home when you go out.
Fit (= install) a burglar alarm (= a machine which makes a noise if someone enters your home).

Make sure your money is safe, e.g. wear a money belt.

Carry a mace spray. (This is a chemical and if you spray it in someone’s face, it is very unpleasant. In some countries you are allowed to carry this type of spray.)

Put money and valuables (= valuable possessions) in a safe (= a strong metal box, which is very difficult to open or break).

Keep a gun in your house for self-defence (= to protect yourself if someone attacks you).
Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from Unit 80.

81.1 Organise the words in the box into three groups: crimes, people, and places.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>murder</th>
<th>thief</th>
<th>prison</th>
<th>barrister</th>
<th>robbery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burglar</td>
<td>cell</td>
<td>criminal</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>rape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shoplifting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>manslaughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>prisoner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>police station</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

81.2 Respond to these statements or questions confirming the crime in each one.

1 A: He broke into the house, didn’t he?
   B: Yes, he’s been charged with ………………….
2 A: He killed his wife?
   B: Yes, he’s been charged ………………….
3 A: She stole clothes and jewellery from that department store, didn’t she?
   B: Yes, and she’s been ………………….
4 A: The man on the motorbike didn’t mean to kill the boy.
   B: No, but he’s been charged ………………….
5 A: He took the money from her bag?
   B: Yes, but they caught him and he’s been ………………….

81.3 How safe and secure are you? Answer these questions, yes or no.

1 Do you often walk in areas which are not very safe? yes = 1 no = 0
2 Do you often walk on your own in these areas late at night? yes = 2 no = 0
3 Do you wear a money belt when you go out? yes = 0 no = 1
4 Do you wear an expensive watch or expensive jewellery? yes = 1 no = 0
5 Do you check doors and windows before you go out when your home is empty? yes = 0 no = 2
6 Do you have a burglar alarm? yes = 0 no = 1
7 Do you leave lights on when you go out? yes = 0 no = 1
8 Is there someone who protects the building while you are out? yes = 0 no = 2
9 Do you have a safe in your home? yes = 0 no = 1

Now add up your score: less than 3 = very, very safe; 3–5 = quite safe; 6–8 = you could take a lot more care; more than 8 = you are a dangerous person to know!

81.4 Fill the gaps in these questions with a suitable word.

1 Do you think the police should …………………. guns?
2 Do you think the police should be …………………. to stop and question people without a special reason?
3 Do you agree with capital …………………. for certain crimes such as murder?
4 Do you think it should be legal for people to carry a mace …………………?
5 Do you think people should be allowed to use a gun or knife in self-………………?
6 Do you think tougher punishments will help to …………………. crime?

What is your opinion on these questions? Discuss them with another person if possible.
A Types of government

Monarchy: a state ruled by a king or queen. There are also countries that have a monarchy, but the monarch is not the ruler, e.g. The United Kingdom.

Republic: a state governed by representatives (= men or women chosen by the people) and a president, e.g. USA or France. People who believe in this system are republicans.

Democracy: a system of government in which leaders are chosen by the people, e.g. France or the UK. People who believe in this system are democrats.

Dictatorship: a system of government in which one person rules the country (= one person has total power). This person is called a dictator.

B Political beliefs

Abstract noun  Personal noun/adjective
conservatism  conservative
socialism  socialist
social democracy  social democrat
liberalism  liberal
communism  communist
fascism  fascist

People who believe in social democracy are social democrats.

C Political positions

What does it mean to be a socialist or a conservative? Often, it means different things in different countries, but in Britain we often talk about someone’s political position like this:

left-wing / on the left  middle of the road / in the centre  right-wing / on the right
(= socialist)  (= liberal)  (= conservative)

D Elections

In a democracy, people vote for (= they choose in a formal way / elect) the political party (e.g. conservatives, liberals or socialists) that they want to form (= make) the government. They do this in an election, and in many countries elections take place / are held (= they happen) every four or five years.

42% voted for the socialists in the last election (= the socialists got 42% of the votes). The president was elected two years ago.

E Government

Political systems are different all over the world. In the UK, when a political party wins a majority (= 51% or more) of seats (= official positions in parliament) in an election, they become the government of the country, their leader (= the head of the party / person in control) becomes Prime Minister and they are in power.

The government must have policies (= programmes of action) to run (= manage) the country. This means, for example, an economic policy (for the economy), and a foreign policy (for actions taken by the country in other parts of the world).
Exercises

82.1 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abstract noun</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>democracy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictatorship</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socialism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conservatism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberalism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

82.2 Fill the gaps to complete this text about the political system in the United Kingdom. One word in each gap.

In the UK (1) _______ are held every five years. (The (2) _______ Minister may decide to hold one after four years, but five years is the maximum.)
Some countries have a system of proportional representation: this means in theory, that a political party with 30% of the (3) _______ should get 30% of the seats in (4) _______. In the UK, the political (5) _______ is different: here the winner takes all. This means that the person with the most votes in each political area (called a constituency) wins the seat; and the political (6) _______ which wins a (7) _______ of the seats will (8) _______ the government on their own. As a result of this system, it is possible for a party to be in (9) _______ with only 40% of the total vote. Some people think this system is unfair.

What do you think? What possible reasons could there be to justify (= support) this system? Think about your answer, then compare it with the ideas suggested in the key.

82.3 Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1. Which party is in power at the moment?
2. When were they elected?
3. Who is the leader of this party?
4. Is this person the President or Prime Minister of your country?
5. Do you agree with most of their policies?
6. Would you describe yourself as left-wing, right-wing, or in the centre?
7. Do you think your political views have changed much during your lifetime?
8. How many major (= important) political parties are there?
9. Who did you vote for in the last election?
10. Do you think this party will win the next election? Will you vote for them again?

82.4 You can increase your English vocabulary in politics quite easily:

Buy three newspapers (in English if you are in an English speaking country, or your own language if you are in your own country), and find the same political story in each one. Read the articles and underline any words that appear in all of them, and any other words you think are important. If you are reading a newspaper in English, try to guess the meaning of these words and then use a dictionary to check.

This exercise is equally useful if you read articles in your own language. You use a bilingual dictionary to find the English translation/explanation for your underlined words, and you can then look up these words in a monolingual dictionary as well.
Bureaucracy

What is it?

Bureaucracy refers to the official rules and procedures used by officials (= bureaucrats) to control an organisation or country. For many people it is a negative word as it often means unnecessary rules, long waits, and lots of documents and forms.

Documents

When you need to obtain (= get) or show documents, it is important that you know the names of them. Here are some important ones:

- **passport**
- **identity card**: a card with your name, date of birth and photo to show who you are. Great Britain is one of the few countries where people still do not have identity cards.
- **driving licence**: the official document which permits you to drive on public roads.
- **visa**: this gives you permission to enter, pass through or leave a country.
- **certificates**: official pieces of paper stating certain facts, e.g. a **birth certificate** gives facts about your birth, and **exam certificates** state you have passed certain exams.

Officials often check (= look at and examine) your documents, e.g. the police may check your driving licence; passport officials may check your identity card.

Some of these documents are for a fixed period of time, e.g. a visa may be for six months. At the end of that time, your visa **runs out** (*infml*) / **expires** (*fml*) (= it finishes / comes to an end). If you want to stay in the country you must **renew** it (= have a new one for a further period of time). You can **renew** a visa, a passport, a membership card for a club, etc.

Forms

There are also situations where you need to **fill in** (= complete) forms. Here are some:

- **landing card**: a form you may have to fill in when you enter another country.
- **enrolment form**: a form you often fill in when you do a course, go to a school or college, etc. It may also be called a **registration form**.
- **application form**: a form to write details of yourself, often when applying for a job.

With almost all forms, you will need to **sign** them (= write your **signature**), e.g.:

  
  [Signature]

Formal language

Here are some formal written expressions and their spoken English meanings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written</th>
<th>Spoken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date of birth</td>
<td>= When were you born?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country of origin</td>
<td>= Where do you come from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marital status</td>
<td>= Are you single or married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of arrival</td>
<td>= When did you arrive?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of departure</td>
<td>= When are you leaving? (or when did you leave?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bureaucratic problems

We often associate bureaucracy with problems. For example, you may have to **queue** (*v, n*) (= wait in a line) to get an official piece of paper or have it **stamped**.
Exercises

83.1 Write down at least two words which can be used before these nouns.

1 ........................................ 3 ........................................
   card ........................................ licence

2 ........................................ 4 ........................................
   certificate ........................................ form

83.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 Will you need to ........................................ a visa if you go to the United States?
2 I was surprised that nobody ........................................ my passport when we arrived in France.
3 Could you ........................................ this form, please?
4 They sent the form back to me because I had forgotten to ........................................ it at the bottom.
5 I'm afraid my visa ........................................ next week, so if I want to stay here I will have to
   ........................................ it. But I don't think it'll be a problem.
6 You should get there early because there are always long ........................................, and you may have
to wait quite a long time.
7 I want to do an English course in London, so I wrote to a few schools and asked them to
send me an ........................................ form.

83.3 How many of these documents do you have?

- a passport
- an identity card
- a driving licence
- a TV licence
- a birth certificate
- a degree certificate (from a university)
- a marriage certificate
- an exam certificate for an English exam, e.g. Cambridge, Oxford or ARELS

83.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable paraphrase.

1 What's your date of birth? In other words, when ........................................?
2 What's your country of origin? ........................................?
3 What's your marital status? ........................................?
4 What was your date of arrival? ........................................?
5 When's your date of departure? ........................................?

83.5 I asked some English people what they felt about bureaucracy and also about problems they
had had with bureaucracy. What about you? How do you feel? Have you had any problems?
Write down your thoughts and problems, then compare them with the replies from British
people in the answer key.

1 ........................................
2 ........................................
3 ........................................
**War and peace**

**A The outbreak (= start) of war**

Wars often start because of a conflict (= strong disagreement) between countries or groups of people, about territory (= land that belongs to one group or country). Look at the diagram on the right and read the text on the left.

Country A invades country B (= A enters B by force and in large numbers), and captures (also takes / takes control of) the city of X. Soldiers from country B have to retreat (= go backwards; ≠ to advance) to the city of Y. A’s army and air force continue to attack the city of Y (= take violent action to damage it), but B’s soldiers defend it (= take action to protect it) successfully.

**B A war zone**

The area around the city of Y is now the main war zone (= the area where the fighting is happening). Country B has asked for help from its allies (= countries who are friends with country B). The allies send aid (= help) in the form of extra troops (= large groups of soldiers) and supplies (= food and other things that are needed every day, e.g. blankets and medicine) to help. There is shelling (= firing of guns and explosives) of the city every day and hundreds of soldiers are either killed or wounded (= injured while fighting). Many civilians (= ordinary people who are not in the army) are killed as well.

**C Peace talks**

For the civilians who are still alive (= dead), the situation gets worse. As winter approaches, food supplies run out (= they are almost gone/finished) and there is no electricity. The soldiers get tired, and both sides begin to see that neither side can win the war; they agree to meet for peace talks (pl) (= talks to try to negotiate a peace settlement / an end to the war). After some time they agree to a ceasefire (= a period of no fighting).

**D Terrorism**

This is violent action for political reasons. People who do this are terrorists, and a common terrorist crime is hijacking (= to take control of a bus, train, ship or plane; the people on board then become prisoners). The main purpose of hijacking is to use the prisoners (called hostages) in order to bargain for something (= to demand something in exchange for the hostages). The terrorists may agree to release (v, n) the hostages (= permit the hostages to go free) if a government agrees to give the terrorists money or release other terrorists.
Exercises

84.1 Match the words on the left with the correct definition on the right.

1 ally a land controlled by a country
2 release b stop fighting
3 conflict c permit to go free
4 troops d injure while fighting
5 invade e large groups of soldiers
6 wound f friendly country
7 territory g strong disagreement
8 ceasefire h enter another country by force and in large numbers

84.2 Use opposites to contradict what the speaker says in the sentences below. Look at the example first.

Example: A: Is the soldier dead?
B: No, he’s ...still alive.

1 A: Will they agree to a ceasefire?
B: No, they’ll .................................................................

2 A: Do you think the army will try to advance when the weather improves?
B: No, I think .................................................................

3 A: Do the people still have lots of food?
B: No, they’re beginning to ............................................... 

4 A: Is the town mostly full of soldiers?
B: No, they’re .................................................................

5 A: Do you think they’ll keep the hostages for a long time?
B: No, I’m sure they’ll .....................................................

84.3 When we repeat an idea in a text we often try to avoid using the same word twice. Read this text and find examples of words being used as synonyms for previous ideas. The first one has been done for you (food and medicine = supplies).

THERE is a desperate need for food and medicine, but with the town surrounded, the lorries are unable to bring in essential supplies. We have seen ordinary people in the street giving some of their meagre rations of food to the soldiers who are defending them, but very soon the troops will be just as hungry as the civilians if the situation gets any worse.

Meanwhile, the centre of the town is being slowly destroyed. There is almost daily shelling of the buildings that still stand, and this morning we witnessed gunmen firing at almost anyone who dared to go out into the streets. One old woman was hit in the leg and we saw at least two others who were quite badly wounded as well.

Aid agencies have appealed to the soldiers to allow them to enter the town, but so far the General in command has even refused to let anyone in, including doctors and nurses. Many fear it is now only a matter of days before the town is captured, and if this happens, the army could take control of the whole region within weeks.

84.4 Can you answer these questions with two reasons for each one? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else before checking with the key.

1 Why do terrorists take hostages?
2 Why do some governments always refuse to agree to terrorist demands?
A **Important definitions**

People are more worried about the environment (= the air, water, and land around us) as a result of the harmful (= dangerous/damaging) effects of human activity. Some of these activities cause pollution (= dirty air, land and water) and some are destroying the environment (= damaging it so badly that soon parts will not exist). Here are some of the problems:

- **The ozone layer**: a layer of gases which stop harmful radiation from the sun reaching the earth; recent research shows that there is now a hole in parts of the ozone layer.
- **Global warming**: an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in carbon dioxide.
- **Acid rain**: rain that contains dangerous chemicals; this is caused by smoke from factories.

B **The ‘greens’**

Because of these problems, there are many groups of people whose aim is conservation (= the protection of natural things, e.g. plants and animals). They are often referred to as greens, e.g. ‘Greenpeace’ and ‘Friends of the Earth’.

C **Common causes of damage**

- Smoke from factories
- Car exhaust fumes
- Dumping (= throwing away) industrial waste (= unwanted material) in seas and rivers
- Aerosol cans (usually called sprays). Some of these contain CFCs (= a chemical) which can damage the ozone layer.
- Cutting down tropical rainforests (e.g. The Amazon). This increases carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

D **How can we help?**

- Don’t throw away bottles, newspapers, etc. Take them to a bottle bank or newspaper bank, and then they can be recycled (= used again).
- Plant more trees.
- Don’t waste (= use badly) resources, e.g. water, gas. Try to save (= waste) them.

*Note*: a resource is a valuable possession. There are natural resources, e.g. water or gold; and human resources, e.g. knowledge and skills. The word is usually plural.
Exercises

85.1 Fill the gaps to form a compound noun or phrase from the opposite page.
1 the ............ layer 5 ............ warming
2 ............ rain 6 ............ fumes
3 ............ waste 7 ............ rainforests
4 a bottle ............ 8 natural or human ............

85.2 Complete these word-building tables. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waste</td>
<td>protect</td>
<td>damage</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damage</td>
<td></td>
<td>harm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>danger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

85.3 Complete the definitions.
1 Conservation is the protection of natural things, e.g. ............ and ............
2 Acid rain is rain that contains dangerous chemicals. It is caused by ............
3 The ozone layer is a layer of gases that stop dangerous radiation from the sun from reaching ............
4 Global warming is an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in ............
5 CFC (chlorofluorocarbon) is a chemical which ............

85.4 If we want to look after the environment, there are certain things we should and shouldn't do. Complete these two lists in suitable ways.

We should:
- paper, bottles and clothes.
- tropical rainforests.
- more trees.
- water and energy.

We shouldn't:
- paper, bottles and clothes.
- the ozone layer.
- water and energy.
- tropical rainforests.

85.5 Test your knowledge of words from the opposite page and ‘green’ issues. Are these statements true or false?
1 CFCs protect the ozone layer.
2 'Greens' believe in conservation.
3 A hole in the ozone layer could increase skin cancer.
4 Cutting down tropical rainforests increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
5 Plastic cannot be recycled.
Air travel

A Departures

This is the usual sequence of activities when you get to the airport.

First you go to the check-in desk where they weigh your luggage. Usually you are permitted 20 kilos, but if your bags weigh more, you may have to pay excess baggage (= you pay extra). The airline representative checks your ticket and gives you a boarding card for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through passport control where an official checks [NOT controls] your passport, and into the departure lounge. Here, you can also buy things in the duty-free, e.g. perfume, alcohol and cigarettes. About half an hour or forty minutes before take-off, you are told to go to a gate number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you get on the plane. When you board (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have hand luggage, you can put it under your seat or in the overhead locker above your seat. The plane then taxis (= moves slowly) towards the runway, and when it has permission to take off, it accelerates along the runway and takes off.

Note: The verb to taxi is generally only used in this context.

B The flight

You may want or need to understand certain announcements; these come from the captain (= the pilot) or from an air steward or stewardess / cabin crew / flight attendants (= people who look after the passengers):

Please fasten your seat belt and put your seat in the upright position.

We are now cruising (= flying comfortably) at an altitude (= height) of 10,000 metres.

May we remind passengers (= ask passengers to remember) that there is no smoking until you are inside the terminal building (= where passengers arrive and depart).

The cabin crew (= air stewards) are now coming round with landing cards. (These are cards you sometimes have to fill in when you enter certain countries.)

C Arrival

When the plane lands (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop / come to a halt. When the doors are open, you get off the plane and walk through the terminal building and go to the baggage reclaim where you collect your luggage. You then pass through customs (green = nothing to declare; red = goods to declare; blue = European Union citizens). If you are lucky, you can then get a bus, taxi or train to the centre of town without waiting too long. You can also hire a car (= rent a car) at most airports.

Note: In British English you normally hire something for a short period, e.g. hire a room for a party, and rent something for a long period, e.g. a flat; for a car, you can use both words.
Exercises

86.1 Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>off</th>
<th>control</th>
<th>free</th>
<th>card</th>
<th>baggage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>lounge</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>reclaim</td>
<td>locker</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. boarding .......................... 6. duty ..................
2. baggage ............................. 7. overhead ................
3. excess ............................... 8. take- ..................
4. passport ............................ 9. departure ..............
5. hand ................................. 10. check- ..............

86.2 What do you call:
1. The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage?
2. The card they give you with the seat number on it?
3. The money you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy?
4. The place where you sit and have a drink when you are waiting for your flight to be called?
5. The bags you carry onto the plane with you?
6. The place above your head where you can put your hand luggage?
7. The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off?
8. The people who look after you on the plane?
9. The part of the airport you walk through when you arrive or depart?
10. The place where you collect your luggage after you land?

86.3 Complete this part of a letter about an unpleasant flight.

Dear Tom,

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible flight. We (1) _______ two hours late because of bad weather, and then over the channel we hit more bad weather. The (2) _______ announced that we had to (3) _______ our seat belts, which was a bit worrying, and for half an hour we (4) _______ through a terrible storm. It was still raining and very windy when we (5) _______ in Rome and I was really glad to (6) _______ the plane and get into the airport building.

Fortunately things have improved since then but I really hope the return (7) _______ is a lot better.

86.4 Think about the whole experience of flying (from check-in to the time you leave the airport at your destination) and answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

1. What is the most interesting part, and what is the most boring part?
2. Where do you often have delays, and why?
3. Is there any part that frightens or worries you?
4. What do you usually do during most flights?
5. Do you always eat the food they give you?
6. Is there one thing which would improve flying and make the experience more interesting?
Hotels

Types of hotel

Hotels in Britain are graded with stars from one-star to five-star (five-star hotels are the best and most expensive). You can also stay in a Bed & Breakfast (B&B) (also called Guest Houses) where you pay for a bedroom, possibly an ensuite (= room with private bathroom) and breakfast.

Types of hotel accommodation

- a single room: for one person with a single bed
- a double room: for two people with one large double bed
- a twin room: for two people with two single beds
- full board: includes breakfast, lunch and dinner
- half board: includes breakfast and dinner
- B & B: just the room and breakfast

A visit to a hotel

We stayed in the Carlton Hotel for three nights in July, but I booked (= reserved) our room three months in advance (= before; in other words, in April) because it was the middle of the tourist season. When we arrived we checked in at reception, then the porter carried our suitcases up to our room. I gave him a small tip (n, v) – about 50p, I think. The staff were very friendly – we had a very nice chambermaid (= the woman who cleans the room) – and the room was very comfortable. The only problem we had, in fact, was with the shower which didn’t work (= function) very well. (You could also say ‘There was something wrong with the shower’.)

Useful words and expressions

Could I book (= reserve) a room for next Thursday?
Could I have an early morning call at 7 a.m. please? (= Could you wake me at 7 a.m.?)
Could you put it on my bill, please? (= add the cost to the bill, e.g. for a drink you have in the hotel bar)
Could I pay my bill, please? (= pay for everything)
Could you order (= call) a taxi for me to go to the airport?
Are you fully booked (= completely full) next week?
Is breakfast/dinner included? (= Does the price include breakfast/dinner?)
Where’s the lift? (= the machine which takes you up or down a floor) [AmEng = elevator]
Excuse me. How do I get to the underground station from here?
Exercises

87.1 Put these sentences in a logical order.
1 I paid my bill.
2 I checked in at reception.
3 I left the hotel.
4 I went up to my room.
5 I spent the night in the hotel.
6 I had an early morning call at seven o’clock.
7 I booked a room at the hotel.
8 I went out for dinner in a local restaurant.
9 I arrived at the hotel.
10 I got up and had a shower.
11 I had breakfast.
12 I tipped the porter who carried my luggage upstairs.

87.2 What would you say in these situations?
1 You want to stay in a hotel for two nights next week with your husband/wife. You phone the hotel. What do you ask or say?
2 You are at the hotel reception and you are planning to leave in about 15 minutes. What could you ask the receptionist?
3 You want to wake up at 7 a.m. but you don’t have an alarm clock. What do you ask at reception?
4 You have a drink in the hotel bar. The barman asks how you want to pay. What’s your reply?
5 When you turn on the shower in your room, the water comes out very very slowly. What could you say at reception?
6 You want to go to the nearest bank but don’t know where it is. What do you ask at reception?

87.3 You are staying in quite a good hotel (e.g. two-star or three-star) in your country. Would you expect to have the following?
1 a room without a private bathroom
2 a hairdryer in the bathroom
3 a colour television in the room
4 a telephone in the room
5 writing paper in the room
6 a machine for making tea and coffee in the room
7 an electric trouser press (= a machine which presses/irons your trousers for you) in the room
8 air conditioning in the room

If possible, compare your answers with someone from a different country.
A Sightseeing

You may do a bit of sightseeing on holiday, or you may do a lot of sightseeing, but you will probably go to a museum or art gallery, and see or visit some of these things:

Many people go on a sightseeing tour of a town (usually in a bus); they can also go on a tour of the castle / the cathedral / the art gallery, etc. When you are sightseeing, it helps to buy a guidebook (= a book of information for tourists) and a map of the town you are in.

B Things that tourists often do on holiday

look round the shops / have a look round the shops
take photographs
spend a lot of / lots of money
buy souvenirs (= typical products from the country)
get lost (= lose their way)
go out most evenings (= go to different places for social reasons, e.g. restaurant or disco)
have a good/great time (= enjoy themselves)

C Describing ‘places’

The word place is very common and can describe a building, an area, a town, or country:

Bruges is a lovely place (= town) and we found a really nice place (= hotel) to stay.
The town is full of interesting places (= areas/buildings).

These words are often used when we describe places:

Venice is beautiful but it’s always packed (= very crowded/full) with tourists in the summer.
New York is very cosmopolitan. (= full of people from different countries and cultures)
Vienna has lots of historical monuments. (= places, e.g. castles, built a long time ago)
Many beautiful cities have become very touristy. (= a negative word: ‘too much tourism’) Sao Paolo is a really lively place (= full of life and activity) and the night-life is fantastic.

Note: If you want to ask if it is ‘a good idea’ to visit a place, you can use worth + -ing:
A: If I go to Scotland, is it worth spending a few days in Glasgow?
B: Yes definitely. And if you want to travel round a bit, it’s worth renting a car.
88.1 Complete this postcard that John sent to his family while he was on holiday. You may need a word or phrase in each space.

Hi everyone, I've been in Paris for almost a week now and I'm having a (1)__________. I spent the first few days (2)__________ - The Eiffel Tower, Notre Dame, and all the usual tourist attractions. Most places are absolutely (3)__________ with tourists (it's the time of the year I suppose), so yesterday I decided to have (4)__________ round the shops and I bought a few (5)__________.

Today I've been to a couple of very interesting art (6)__________, I got (7)__________ on my way back to the hotel but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating (8)__________ with lots of little stalls selling just about everything from apples to antiques.

I ate in the hotel the first night but usually I (9)__________ and have dinner in a restaurant - the food is fantastic. I'm afraid I've (10)__________ a lot of money, but it's a great place and I've (11)__________ lots of photographs so you'll be able to see for yourself when I get back home on the 24th. See you then, John.

88.2 Which of these places do you usually visit or go to when you are on holiday?
museums art galleries churches/cathedrals tourist shops concerts
discos / night clubs castles/palaces/templesthe cinema markets restaurants barsthe theatre

88.3 Confirm the information in the questions without repeating the same words and phrases. Use words and phrases from the opposite page.

Example: A: You've got quite a few pictures, haven't you?
B: Yes, we took lots of photos.

1 A: Is it a nice city?
   B: Yes, it's a ..........................................................

2 A: There's a big mix of people in New York, isn't there?
   B: Yes, it's very ..................................................

3 A: Was it very crowded?
   B: Yes, it was ..........................................................

4 A: There's a lot to do in the evenings, isn't there?
   B: Yes, the ..........................................................

5 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?
   B: Yes, we ..........................................................

88.4 Without using one town more than twice, name a town or city in your country which is:
lively packed with tourists in the summer
cosmopolitan famous for its historical monuments
very touristy really worth visiting if you are interested in architecture
not worth visiting
On the beach and in the country

A Places to stay
When people go on holiday they stay in various places (= a number of different places): some go to hotels; others rent an apartment (a ‘holiday’ flat) or villa (= a house by the sea or in the countryside; often in the Mediterranean / southern Europe); some prefer sleeping in a tent at a campsite.

B At the beach
Many people spend their holiday in seaside resorts (= towns by the sea for tourists, e.g. Malaga, St. Tropez, Okinawa) where they can spend most of their time on the beach. Some people enjoy swimming, others love sunbathing (= lying on the beach in order to get a suntan). If you like sunbathing, you should use suntan lotion to help you get a tan and protect your skin. If you don’t have any protection, you may get sunburn, which is painful and can be dangerous. And if you want total protection you should use sunblock, or sit under a beach umbrella.
Swimming can also be dangerous if there are rocks under the water or if the sea is rough, e.g. with big waves.

C In the country
People who live in large towns often like to get away (= leave the place where they live) at weekends or in the summer, and enjoy the peace and quiet (= calm and tranquillity) of the country (also called the countryside). Some people just like to put their feet up (= relax and do nothing) and occasionally go for a stroll (= a slow casual walk); while others enjoy hiking (= long walks, often hill walking) across hills and valleys. And the countryside is a great place to have a picnic (= eating a prepared meal of cold food outside).
Note: Learners sometimes say ‘I love to be in the nature’. This is usually a translation from their first language and it is not correct in English. The nearest we can say is probably ‘I love being in the countryside’.

182 English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
Exercises

89.1 Write down at least five words beginning with ‘sun’. You can check your answers on the opposite page and in the index.

sun ..................  sun ..................  sun ..................

sun ..................  sun ..................

89.2 Match a word from the left with a word from the right to form eight words or phrases.

1 sandy waves
2 suntan bathe
3 beach beach
4 rough lotion
5 sun sea
6 sea cliff
7 big side
8 steep umbrella

Now write answers to these questions.

1 Why do most people go to seaside resorts?
2 Why do people sunbathe?
3 Why do they use sunblock?
4 Why do they use suntan lotion?
5 How does it feel if you get sunburn?
6 What sport requires big waves?
7 Have you been in a boat when the sea was very rough? Were you seasick?

89.3 Complete this short text with a suitable word or phrase in each gap.

I live and work in Milan but I like to .................. at the weekend if possible. My parents have a small house in the .................., about 100 kilometres from Milan, and it's a great place to go if you want a bit of peace and .................. In the summer you can just .................. by the pool during the hottest part of the day, then in the evening go for a .................. through the village or over the fields. Sometimes we go out for the whole day and have a .................. somewhere, by the lake or next to one of the many vineyards.

89.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word. (One word only for each gap.)

1 Would you prefer a holiday in a seaside .................. or a holiday in the country?
2 Would you prefer to stay in one place, or would you rather (= prefer to) go to .................. places?
3 Would you prefer to spend your time .................. on a beach or would you rather go for long walks?
4 Would you prefer to stay in a hotel or .................. an apartment?
5 Would you prefer to eat in a restaurant or have a .................. in the open air?
6 Would you prefer somewhere that was quite lively, or would you rather go to a place where there was peace and ..................?

Look at the questions again. Which would you prefer? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.
90 Time

Prepositions: at, on, in

e.g. at 8 o'clock, at 3.30, at midnight
on a day e.g. on Monday, on July 14, on the second day
in a period e.g. in the morning, in April, in 1995

Important exceptions are: at Christmas, at Easter, at the weekend, at night

Words often confused

Some time prepositions are easily confused. These are common problems:
I will stay here until she phones. (= I will go after she has phoned)
I will be in the office until 4 o'clock. (= I will leave the office at 4 o'clock)
I will be in the office by 4 o'clock. (= I will arrive at the office not later than 4 o'clock)
I'll be back home by lunchtime. (= I will arrive home not later than lunchtime)

I've worked in this office for six months. (for + a period of time)
I've worked in this office since May. (since + a point in time)

I worked for a newspaper during the war / 1990 / the summer. (this tells you 'when')
I worked for a newspaper for four years / six months. (this tells you 'how long')
[NOT I worked for the newspaper during four years.]

Note: During a period may mean a part of that period or the whole period, e.g. 'during the war' can mean part of the war or the whole war. The context usually makes it clear, but if we want to stress or emphasise that an action occupied the whole period, we often use throughout, e.g. It rained throughout the night. (= it didn't stop raining)

I'm going back to Spain in ten days' time. (= ten days from now)
We arranged our next meeting for April 7th. (= to be on April 7th)

Approximate times: past and future

I've known my dentist for ages (= for a long time), but I haven't been for a check-up recently/lately (= e.g. in the last few months).
I haven't seen Tom recently/lately (= e.g. in the last few weeks).
I used to go to an Australian dentist but that was a long time ago (e.g. 5–10 years ago).
My sister went to the dentist the other day (= a few days ago).
This dictionary will be OK for the time being (= for now / until I need a better one).

Periods of time

There are 60 seconds in a minute; 60 minutes in an hour, 24 hours in a day, 7 days in a week, 2 weeks in a fortnight, 52 weeks in a year, 10 years in a decade; 100 years in a century.

Time passing: take and last

My English course lasts ten weeks. (= it continues for ten weeks)
How long does the film last? (= How long is it from the beginning to the end?)
It takes me (= I need) half an hour to get to school.
We can walk but it'll take (= we'll need) a long time.
Exercises

90.1 Complete the text with *at, on, or in.*

90.2 Cross out the incorrect answers.
1. The teacher told us to finish our homework by/until Monday.
2. We can’t leave by/until the others get back.
3. I’ve been in the army for/since I was eighteen.
4. They’ve worked here for/since/during six months.
5. I visit my uncle every week for/since/during the winter.
6. I was at university for/since/during four years.
7. She’s going back to France in/after three months’ time.
8. He left the office during/throughout the lunch break.
9. It was hot during/throughout August; we didn’t have one day under 30 degrees.
10. I booked a table in the restaurant by/for next Saturday. I hope that’s OK.

90.3 Can you complete these sentences with the correct number?
1. The Olympic Games usually lasts about . . . . . . weeks.
2. Rembrandt was born in the . . . . . . th century.
3. President Kennedy died in . . . . . . That’s . . . . . . years ago.
4. It takes approximately . . . . . . hours to fly from Tokyo to New York.
5. Some athletes can run 100 metres in less than . . . . . . seconds.
6. The . . . . . . was the decade in which the USA and USSR (at that time) were both trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

90.4 Replace the underlined time expressions with more ‘approximate’ time expressions.
1. I went to the library three days ago.
2. This dictionary isn’t great but it’ll be OK until I’m more advanced.
3. I haven’t been to the cinema for the last three weeks.
4. And I haven’t been to a concert for three or four years.
5. I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago.

90.5 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.
1. On weekdays I usually get up at . . . . . . and leave home at . . . . . .
2. I always clean my teeth in . . . . . .
3. I don’t go to school/college/work on . . . . . .
4. I usually have a holiday in . . . . . .
5. I have been in my present school/college/job for . . . . . .
6. I have been studying English since . . . . . .
7. I haven’t spoken English since . . . . . .
8. It takes me . . . . . . to get to school/college/work.
9. You can’t get a driving licence until . . . . . .
10. It rains quite a lot during . . . . . .
**Cardinal numbers**

379 = three hundred and seventy nine
2,860 = two thousand eight hundred and sixty
5,084 = five thousand and eighty-four
470,000 = four hundred and seventy thousand
2,550,000 = two million, five hundred and fifty thousand
3,000,000,000 = three billion

Note: There is no plural 's' after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. On their own, they can be plural, e.g. thousands of people; millions of insects.

**Ordinal numbers and dates**

One of the problems with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way:

We write 4 January (or 4th January), but say the fourth of January or January the fourth.
We write 21 May (or 21st May), but say the twenty-first of May or May the twenty-first.

1997 = nineteen ninety seven
1905 = nineteen hundred and five or nineteen oh five

**Fractions and decimals**

1\textfrac{1}{4} = one and a quarter
1\textfrac{1}{2} = one and a half
1\textfrac{3}{4} = one and three quarters
1\textfrac{1}{5} = one and a third
1.25 = one point two five
1.33 = one point three three
1.75 = one point seven five

**Percentages**

26% = twenty-six per cent
More than 50% is the majority; less than 50% is the minority.

**Arithmetic**

There are four basic processes for working out (= calculating) a problem:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{+} = addition \hspace{1cm} e.g. 6 + 4 = 10 (six plus/and four equals/is ten)
  \item \textbf{-} = subtraction \hspace{1cm} e.g. 6 - 4 = 2 (six minus four equals/is two)
  \item \textbf{\times} = multiplication \hspace{1cm} e.g. 6 \times 4 = 24 (six times / multiplied by four equals/is twenty-four)
  \item \textbf{\div} = division \hspace{1cm} e.g. 4 \div 2 = 2 (four divided by two equals/is two)
\end{itemize}

**Saying '0'**

This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

- telephone number: 603 724 = six oh three, seven two four (AmEng = six zero three)
- mathematics: 0.7 = nought point seven, 6.02 = six point oh two
- temperature: -10 degrees = ten degrees below zero / minus ten degrees
- football: 2-0 = two nil tennis: 40-0 = forty love

**Talking numbers**

Here are several useful words and expressions connected with numbers:

The streets have got odd numbers (e.g. 3, 5, 7) on the left and even numbers (e.g. 4, 6, 8) on the right.

I got 16 out of 20 in our last test.
Exercises

91.1 How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answers after each one.

1. 462
2. $2\frac{1}{2}$
3. 2,345
4. 6.75
5. 0.25
6. $3\frac{1}{3}$
7. 1,250,000
8. 10.04
9. 47%
10. 10 September
11. 3 July
12. 602 8477 (phone number)
13. −5 centigrade
14. In 1903
15. In 1876

Now practise saying them. If possible, record yourself saying them and then record a native speaker of English saying them or someone from your country who speaks English very well. Listen to both. How do you sound?

91.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. After the game I heard the crowd was over twenty thousands.
2. We arrived on the ten September.
3. There were two hundred twenty altogether.
4. I got twenty-five from forty in my test.
5. My birthday is thirty-one August.
6. My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

91.3 Write answers to these problems.

1. 23 and 36 is ...........
2. 24 times 8 is ...........
3. 80 minus 20 is ...........
4. 65 divided by 13 is ...........
5. Add 10 and 6, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got left?
6. Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left?

91.4 Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.

1. When were you born?
2. How much do you weigh?
3. What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
4. Is that an odd or an even number?
5. What is the approximate population of your town?
6. What is the approximate population of your country?
7. What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
8. How many kilometres are there in a mile?
Distance, size and dimension

A Distance

The most common way of asking about distance is probably: How far is it? Here are two more common questions, and some expressions often used in the reply.

Is it a long way? | No, just round the corner. / a couple of minutes' walk (= very near).
Is it very far? | No, not far. / No, about five or ten minutes' walk (= quite near).
Is it a long way? | Yeah quite a long way. / Yeah, over a mile.
Is it very far? | Well it's a long way. / Yes it's miles. / Yes it's too far to walk.

Note: We can use far in a question or negative but not in a positive statement on its own, e.g. we don't say 'it's far', we say 'it's a long way'. But we can say 'it's too far to walk'.

B Size and dimension

We can describe size using the nouns above or the adjectives formed from them, like this:

What's the length/width/height/depth/size of ...? or How long/wide/high/tall/deep/big is ...?

Note:
- We generally use tall to describe people, trees and buildings; and high to describe mountains. We also say high-rise buildings.
- Notice also that in the answer to these questions, an adjective follows the measurement:
The garden is about ten metres wide. (= The width is about ten metres.)

C Size in people and things

We use different words to describe the size of people and things:

a tall girl (= a short girl)
a fat person (= a thin person) See Unit 43 for more details.
a long book (= many pages) (= a short book)
a deep lake (= many metres) (= a shallow lake)
a thick book (= a thin book) a wide road (= a narrow road)

Note: We can use big or large to describe size in English, but not great. For English speaking people, great (infnl) = fantastic. But we can use great before big to say that something is very big, e.g. I saw a great big dog in the park.

If you want to ask about size in clothes, you say: What size are you? or What size (shoes) do you take? If you don't know, then you need someone to measure you.
Exercises

92.1 Think about the room/place you are in now and answer these questions, using some of the expressions from the opposite page.

1. How far is it to the nearest shop?
2. How far is it to a bank?
3. Is it very far to the nearest bus stop?
4. Is it very far to a post office?
5. Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool?
6. Is it a long way to the next big town?
7. How far is the nearest railway station?
8. Is it far to the centre of town?

If possible, ask someone else the same questions and compare your answers.

92.2 Write down eight different questions you could ask about the distance, size or dimensions of the things in the pictures.

92.3 Contradict the speaker in the sentences below. Look at the example first.

Example: A: Is it a long film?
B: No, it's quite short.

1. A: Is he a bit fat?
   B: No, he’s ............................................................
2. A: The water’s quite deep, isn’t it?
   B: No, ........................................................................
3. A: Their office is in quite a low building, isn’t it?
   B: No, ........................................................................
4. A: Is the road very wide at that point?
   B: No, ........................................................................
5. A: It’s a fairly boring place, isn’t it?
   B: No, ........................................................................
6. A: He’s quite tall, isn’t he?
   B: No, ........................................................................
7. A: They only live in a small place, don’t they?
   B: No, it’s .................................................................
Shapes, colours and patterns

A Shapes

- a square (n)
  - square (adj)
- a rectangle (also oblong) (n)
  - rectangular (adj)
- a circle (n)
  - round (adj)
  - circular (adj)
- a semi-circle
  - pointed (adj)
- an oval (n)
  - oval (adj)
- a triangle (n)
  - triangular (adj)
- a pyramid
- a right angle
- a point (n)
- a star

- a square box, a round table, a pointed end, a rectangular field, an oval shape

Note: We can also form adjectives to describe shapes in this way:
The ball was egg-shaped; a heart-shaped wedding cake; a diamond-shaped bag.

B Colours

You will already know most of the common colours. Here are some that are less common:
Mix black and white to form grey. Mix red and blue to form purple.
Mix green and blue to form turquoise. Pink is a colour between red and white.
Beige is a very light brown with some yellow in it.

C Shades of colour (= degrees and variation of colour)

She bought a dark green skirt.
He was wearing light blue jeans.
My new shirt is pale yellow.

Note: With some colours, we use pale rather than light, e.g. pale yellow, pale pink.

D Patterns (also called ‘designs’)

- striped shirt
- tartan skirt
- floral tie
- check dress

E Use of the suffix -ish

When we want to say that a shape is almost round or a colour nearly green, we can express this idea by adding the suffix -ish: a roundish face; a greenish tie; a yellowish colour.
Exercises

93.1 Describe these pictures using the correct noun and a suitable adjective.

1. Table
2. Star
3. Window
4. Shirt
5. Pencil
6. Plate
7. Bag
8. Couch
9. Dog
10. Jeans

93.2 What object is being described in each of these sentences?

1. It’s got a point at one end and that’s the end you use to write with.
2. It’s greyish on the outside, pink on the inside, it swims and you eat it.
3. The shape is rectangular and it’s usually green. There are lots of other lines on it, and people play on it.
4. It’s a reddish-orange in colour, quite long and usually pointed at one end, and you eat it.
5. At certain times of the month it’s completely round; at other times, it’s closer to a semi-circle but not quite.
6. It can look pale blue, more often dark blue, and sometimes a greenish blue. It really depends where it is and whether the sun is shining on it.
7. It’s oval-shaped, white or beige or light brown in colour, hard on the outside, and you eat it usually when it is cooked.
8. It is triangular, and in some countries you have to carry one in the boot of your car.
9. The bottom part is triangular, and at the top there is another bit in the shape of a semi-circle. You put things on the triangular part and hang them using the semi-circular part.
10. It has four sides and four right angles.

93.3 What are you wearing? Write down a detailed description of what you are wearing, including the exact colour of everything. If there is a colour or design you cannot describe, try to find it using a bilingual dictionary.
Partitives

There are many different words used to describe a particular quantity of something. Usually the word is joined to the noun it describes with ‘of’.

A Containers (e.g. a bag) and contents (e.g. of shopping)

- a bag of shopping
- a box of chocolates
- a carton of orange juice
- a can of cola
- a cup of coffee
- a tube of toothpaste
- a tin of fruit
- a bowl of sugar
- a glass of water
- a packet of cigarettes
- a jug of milk
- a bottle of wine
- a jar of marmalade
- a vase of flowers

B With uncountable nouns

When we use uncountable nouns (e.g. advice), we sometimes want to talk about one of something. We cannot say an advice or one advice, but we can use certain words to make these nouns singular: a sheet of paper (= one piece of paper) or a slice of bread (= one piece of bread). We can actually use the word piece with many nouns:

- a piece of cake
- a piece of wood

You can use piece with some abstract nouns, e.g. a piece of information, a piece of luck.

The most common partitive is a bit, which is informal and used with many nouns. It usually means a small amount but can be quite general. It can be used with the examples above, and more: a bit of butter, a bit of time, etc.

C A pair of ...

Some nouns have two parts, e.g. trousers (two legs) and shoes (left and right). You can use a pair of to specify the number, e.g. a pair of skis, two pairs of shoes, three pairs of tights.

D Groups of things

- a herd of cows
- a group of people
- a bunch of grapes
- a gang of youths/kids/teenagers

Gang has a negative meaning: it suggests a group of young people who may cause trouble.
Exercises

94.1 Some of these containers do not look exactly the same as the ones on the opposite page, but the names are the same. Can you decide what the missing words are?

1 a ............... of milk
2 a ............... of water
3 a ............... of fruit
4 a ............... of matches
5 a ............... of biscuits
6 a ............... of apples
7 a ............... of paint
8 a ............... of coffee

94.2 Contents come in different containers. Would you be surprised to see any of the following?

- a glass of soup
- a jug of wine
- a jar of mustard
- a vase of coffee
- a tube of cigarettes
- a bag of salt
- a bowl of milk
- a tin of tomatoes
- a carton of toothpaste

94.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable noun.

1 They gave her a big ............... of flowers for her birthday.
2 They’re looking for a ............... of youths who may be responsible for the damage.
3 I cut about six ............... of ham and put them on a plate.
4 They own a large ............... of land on the coast.
5 I did a ............... of homework last night, then went out.
6 She told us to take out a blank ............... of paper, then write our names at the top.
7 A small ............... of people gathered outside the embassy.
8 I need at least two ............... of socks inside these shoes.
9 I asked him for a ............... of advice.
10 I like to put a ............... of cream in my coffee.
11 Have you seen that old ............... of boots I use for gardening?
12 I’ve got a ............... of time, so I can help you now if you like.

94.4 Cross out any answers which are wrong in these sentences.

1 I asked her for a bit/piece of advice.
2 I ordered a piece/sheet of cake.
3 There was a group/gang of journalists outside her house.
4 My lunch consisted of two slices/pieces of bread and a small bunch/group of grapes.
5 She hit me over the head with a small piece/bit of wood.
6 I’m in a hurry but I’ve still got a bit/piece of time.
7 We had a piece/bit of luck this morning: we won some money!
8 Could I have a piece/bit/drop of milk in my coffee?
The senses

A  The five basic senses

These are: sight, hearing, taste, touch and smell. For each one we use a basic verb, which can be followed by an adjective or noun in these constructions:

It looks terrible. (from what I could see)  It looks like a wedding cake.
He sounds German. (from what I heard)  It sounds like a good idea.
It tastes strange. (from tasting it)  This tastes like bread.
It feels soft. (from touching it)  It feels like a blanket.
It smells wonderful. (from smelling it)  This smells like garlic.

We can also use the verbs as nouns. These are very common:

I didn't like the look of the fish.  I really like the sound of church bells.
I don't like the taste of olives.  I hate the smell of petrol.

B  See, look (at) and watch

See is the ability to use your eyes (the verb is not normally used in the progressive);
look (at) often means to look carefully / pay attention to something that is not moving; and
watch often means to pay attention to something that is moving:

I can't see a thing without my glasses. (= I'm not able to see / I am blind)
I can't find my keys and I've looked (= searched / looked carefully) everywhere.
I want the doctor to look at (= look carefully and examine) my knee.
The police have been watching that man for weeks.
I watched the match and then went for a drink with friends.

Look (= look carefully) in the corner of my eye; you can see (= are able to see) the mark.
He ran into me because he wasn't looking. (= paying attention; the speaker seems angry)
He ran into me because he didn't see me. (= wasn't able to see me; the speaker is not angry)

Sometimes two verbs are possible in one context; sometimes only one:

I saw a great film last night. (= at the cinema; we cannot use watch here)
I saw/watched a great programme last night. (= on TV; we can use either verb here)

C  Hear and listen (to)

Hear means able to hear; listen (to) means to pay attention to things you hear:

I couldn't hear what she said. (= I was physically unable to hear)
I can sometimes hear the trains from my bedroom. (= I am able to hear without trying)
I don't know what she said because I wasn't listening. (= I wasn't paying attention)
I often listen to the early evening news on the television. (= I make an effort to listen)
I was listening to the radio when I heard a strange noise outside.

Sometimes it is possible to use hear (but not in the progressive form) to mean 'listen to':

I know he's dead - I heard it on the radio last night. (= I heard it when I was listening)

D  Touch

Don't touch those wires - they're dangerous.
You have to press that button to start the machine.
I don't feel safe up here. Could you hold my hand?
Exercises

95.1 Complete the sentences using words from the box. Use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>water</th>
<th>sore</th>
<th>cod</th>
<th>donkey</th>
<th>photo</th>
<th>silk</th>
<th>fresh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>washing powder</td>
<td>ripe</td>
<td>door bell</td>
<td>horrible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I don’t think I’ll eat this peach; it doesn’t feel ..................
2 Those shoes look .................. When did you buy them?
3 This milk smells .................. I’ll open another bottle.
4 This coffee tastes like .................. Who made it?
5 My feet are feeling .................. after that run.
6 I love the smell of .................. bread.
7 That painting looks like a ..................
8 I know it’s a horse but it looks like a ..................
9 British people eat a lot of haddock. It’s a white fish and tastes like ..................
10 I’m sure it is expensive perfume, but to me it smells like ..................
11 Your telephone sounds just like a ..................
12 This blouse was very cheap but it feels like ..................

95.2 Complete the sentences below the pictures using looks/tastes/feels + adjective.

1 This man ..................
2 This pillow ..................
3 This apple ..................

95.3 Cross out any answers which are wrong.

1 I was listening to / hearing the radio when I listened to / heard a terrible noise outside.
2 The government is going to introduce new laws about noisy neighbours - I listened to / heard it on the radio this morning.
3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn’t listen to / hear it.
4 I don’t know if this is an antique; we’ll have to get an expert to come and look at / see it.
5 They wanted to stay and watch / look at the programme, but it was a bit late.
6 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn’t hearing / listening when I spoke to him.
7 Can you bend over and touch / press your toes?
8 You have to touch / press the eject button if you want to get the video out.
9 Could you touch / hold this video for a moment while I move the TV?
10 If you watch / look carefully, you can look / see how the man does the trick with those cards.

95.4 Write down a smell, taste, and sound that you like and hate. Complete these sentences, and then try to compare your answers with someone else.

I love the smell of ........................................ I hate the smell of ........................................
I love the sound of ........................................ I hate the sound of ........................................
I love the taste of ........................................ I hate the taste of ........................................
Notices and warnings

A Informative notices
Some notices give you information:

OUT OF ORDER
for a machine that is not working, e.g. phone or washing machine

NO VACANCIES
in the window of a B&B (cheap hotel). It means the hotel is full

SOLD OUT
outside a cinema or concert – there are no tickets left. All sold

B Do this!
Some notices tell you to do certain things:

PLEASE QUEUE OTHER SIDE
(= wait in a line on the other side of this notice) e.g. in a bank or post office

KEEP RIGHT
(= stay on the right side, and continue on the right side) e.g. in airports

C Don’t do this!
Some notices tell you not to do certain things:

NO SMOKING

No Parking

DO NOT LEAN OUT OF THE WINDOW

PLEASE DO NOT DISTURB

SILENCE
EXAMINATION IN PROGRESS

DO NOT LEAVE BAGS UNATTENDED

D Watch out!
Some notices are warnings – they tell you to be careful because something bad may happen:

MIND YOUR HEAD
(= be careful you don’t hit your head e.g. in front of a low door)

MIND THE STEP
(= be careful you don’t hit the step and fall e.g. in front of a step)

FRAGILE
(= be careful, this will break easily)

BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS
(= be careful, there are people here who will steal things from your bag or pocket without you knowing)
Exercises

96.1 Can you complete these notices and warnings in possible ways, without looking at the opposite page?

PLEASE QUEUE .......... BEWARE OF ............
MIND THE ............ MIND YOUR ............ SOLD ............
PLEASE DO NOT ............ OUT OF ............
NO ............ KEEP ............

96.2 Where would you expect to see these notices or warnings?

1 No vacancies
2 Beware of pickpockets
3 Nothing to declare
4 Please queue other side
5 OUT OF ORDER
6 Sold out
7 FRAGILE
8 Keep off the grass

96.3 What notice(s) is/are possible in each of these places?

1 a zoo
2 a waiting area in a busy airport
3 the door of a hotel room at 9 o’clock in the morning
4 in front of garage doors
5 above the window of a train
6 inside a theatre
7 on the underground
8 a door going into a low room

96.4 Now write some different notices of your own. Think of six possible notices you could put in one of these places:

1 a school
2 a university
3 a language school
4 a place where people work, e.g. bank, factory, hospital

Where would you put these notices? If possible, do this activity with another person or show it to another person.

96.5 Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language. Try to find six more notices in the next week.
97 Vague language

Vague means ‘not clear or precise or exact’. For example, we can say:
I have a vague idea where it is. (= I know the general area but I don’t know exactly where)
I have a vague memory of the game. (= I can remember bits of it but not very clearly)
In spoken English we often use words which are very vague.

A Thing(s)

- To refer to actions, ideas and facts:
The main thing (= fact) about John is that he likes everything to be organised.
Hitting that young child was a terrible thing (= action) to do.
- To refer to countable objects (often the speaker and listener know what the object is, or
the speaker has forgotten the name of it at the moment of speaking):
What’s that thing (bicycle) doing in the house?
Put those things (cups and saucers) in the cupboard.
- To refer to a general situation:
How are things at school? (= school in general)
Recently, things (= life in general) have been going really well.

B Stuff

We generally use stuff (informal) to refer to uncountable nouns (or a group of countable
nouns) when it is not necessary to be precise and give the exact name. Often the listener
knows what the speaker is talking about.
Just leave that stuff (= different items of clothes) on the floor. I’ll clear it up.
I never use that biological stuff (= washing powder) in my machine.

C (A) sort of ...

This is used to describe something when you are not being very exact or precise. Sometimes
it is not possible to be exact, and sometimes you cannot find the exact word you want.
The walls are a sort of yellowy colour. (= not exactly yellow, but similar to yellow)
It’s a sort of horror film. (= not exactly a horror film, but similar to one)
He gets ... uh sort of ... nervous when you mention the word ‘exams’.

D A bit

It often means ‘a little’, but it is very common in spoken English, and sometimes it may be
used more generally to mean a little or even quite a lot.
Could you speak up a bit (= a little). I can’t hear you very well.
I thought the hotel was a bit (= quite) expensive, actually.

E Approximately

These words have the same meaning but approximately is more formal than the others:
The train should arrive in approximately twenty minutes.
It’s about three miles to the house.
There were roughly twenty people at the party.
We are expecting 100 guests, more or less.
Exercises

97.1 What could thing(s) and stuff refer to in these sentences?
1 I never wear that stuff; it's got such a strong smell.
2 This thing has got stuck in the lock.
3 I bought a couple of bottles when I was in Scotland. It's great stuff.
4 We don't need these things. We can eat the chicken with our fingers.
5 What's that white stuff called that you mix with water to make bread?
6 There was a great thing on television last night about elephants.
7 I couldn't get any more stuff in my suitcase.
8 It's a wonderful thing and keeps my young children occupied for ages.
9 I don't know why I bought that thing - it's too heavy for me to carry even when it's empty.
10 It's good stuff. My hair feels really soft, and it didn't cost a lot.

97.2 Add a few words and phrases from the opposite page to make this conversation less precise and more natural.
A: How many people were at the conference?
B: 400
A: Did you enjoy it?
B: Yes
A: You don't seem very sure.
B: Well, there were some good events, but it was too long.
A: And did you go to John's talk?
B: Naturally
A: How did it go?
B: Well he was nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.
A: Did he have a big audience?
B: 75
A: That's good, isn't?
B: I think John was disappointed - he wanted at least a hundred.

97.3 Reply to each of these questions with a suitable 'vague' response.
1 A: Did you get everything you wanted?
   B: Yeah .................................................................
2 A: Was it expensive?
   B: Yeah .................................................................
3 A: Did you say the walls were blue?
   B: Yeah .................................................................
4 A: Will there be twenty chairs in the room?
   B: Yeah .................................................................
5 A: Is it a very serious film?
   B: Yeah .................................................................
6 A: Are you tired?
   B: Yeah .................................................................

97.4 Think about similar words and phrases that you use when speaking your own language. How many direct translations can you find for the words and phrases on the opposite page?
### A British English and American English

People in Britain and America understand each other perfectly most of the time, but there are differences in grammar, vocabulary, spelling and pronunciation. With vocabulary, the same word may have a different meaning, e.g. British *chips* are American *french fries*; and American *chips* are British *crisps*. Sometimes there are completely different words for the same thing: a *lorry* in British English is called a *truck* in American English.

### B Vocabulary

Here are some important differences. The British English word comes first in each case. Most of the words are explained in other units. Use the index to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roads and transport</th>
<th>Food</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taxi / cab/taxi</td>
<td>biscuits/cookies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return (ticket) / round trip</td>
<td>sweets/candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petrol / gas (gasoline)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main road / highway</td>
<td>chips/french fries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motorway/freeway</td>
<td>crisps/chips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underground/subway</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway/underpass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement/sidewalk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lorry/truck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car park / parking lot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Education</th>
<th>Clothes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>secondary school / high school</td>
<td>trousers/pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term/semester (= periods in</td>
<td>waistcoat/vest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a college year)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university/college</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>autumn/fall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holiday/vacation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortnight / two weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Homes</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tap/faucet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubbish / garbage/trash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dustbin/trashcan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toilet/bathroom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wardrobe/closet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Buildings</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flat/apartment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ground floor / first floor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lift/elevator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toilet (gents/ladies) / bathroom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(men’s/ladies’ room)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Some American English words are now becoming more common in British English, e.g. movie (Br. = film); apartment (Br. = flat); semester (Br. = term). One special problem is that *guys* in American English can refer to men and/or women, but in British English it is only used to refer to men.
Exercises

98.1 Decide if the speaker is using British English or American English, and cross out the incorrect answer.

1 We’ve decided to take our vacation in the autumn/fall this year.
2 At my son’s high school the new term/semester starts next week.
3 I never eat biscuits or sweets/candy.
4 Put that garbage in the dustbin/trashcan.
5 The trousers look nice with that waistcoat/vest.
6 The lorry/truck came past us on the highway.
7 My apartment is on the fourth floor but I’m afraid there’s no lift/elevator.
8 The people next door are on holiday/vacation. They’ll be away for a fortnight.
9 We left the car in the car park / parking lot and took the subway to the centre.
10 My trainers are in the wardrobe/closet.

98.2 Now complete this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British English</th>
<th>American English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trouser</td>
<td>Vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apartment</td>
<td>Trainers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High school</td>
<td>Biscuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garbage</td>
<td>Highways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subways</td>
<td>Fortnight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

98.3 This text includes some words used in American English. Underline them and write the British English words on the right-hand side.

It was getting near lunchtime and I needed some gas, so I left the freeway and drove towards the nearest town. There was a gas station just outside the town and I decided to stop and have a look round. I put the car in a parking lot and took a cab to the centre. It was midday and very hot, so I stopped at a little cafe with tables on the sidewalk. I started talking to a truck driver, who gave me a history of the town, and afterwards he took me on a guided tour. It made a very nice break.

98.4 Here are some more American English words that are explained in different parts of this book. What is the British English equivalent?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American English</th>
<th>British English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stand / wait in line</td>
<td>Stand / wait in line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drapes</td>
<td>Drapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collect call</td>
<td>Collect call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attorney</td>
<td>Attorney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check (in a restaurant)</td>
<td>Check (in a restaurant)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Formal and informal English

Most English that you learn can be used in a wide range of situations. But you will also hear or see language that is formal or informal, and sometimes very formal or very informal. You need to be more careful with this language because it may not be suitable in certain situations. (They are marked *fml* and *infml* throughout the book.)

**A**

**Formal English**

Formal English is more common in writing than speaking. It is found in notices, business letters, and legal English; but you will also hear examples in spoken English.

Cafe notice: Only food purchased (= bought) here may be eaten on the premises (= here).

Police statement in court: I apprehended (= stopped) the accused outside the supermarket.

Theatre announcement: The play will commence (= start) in two minutes.

Formal business situation: The meeting will resume (= start again) this afternoon at 2 p.m.

Lawyer: My client had a broken ankle. Thus (= so) he could not have driven the car.

Formal letter: I regret to inform you (= I am sorry to say) that we are unable to (= can’t) grant (= give) you ...

Announcement: If you require (= need) further assistance (= more help), please contact ... Outside a pub: Parking for patrons (= customers) only.

**B**

**Informal English**

In general, informal language is more common in spoken English than written English. Certain types of language are often informal:

- most uses of *get* are informal (See Unit 21 for more details)
- many *phrasal verbs* are informal (See Units 16 and 17 for more details)
- many *idioms* are informal (See Unit 18 for more details)

Here are some examples using words from above and other common informal words:

I had to go and pick up (= collect) the kids (= children) from school.

My flat is very handy for the shops. (= near the shops and very convenient)

I managed to fix up (= arrange/make) an appointment for 7.30.

I thought the book was terrific (= marvellous).

Most of the students are bright (= intelligent) but one or two are really thick (= stupid).

I offered him ten quid (= pounds) but the guy (= man) wasn’t interested.

I reckon (= think) we’ll get (= obtain) the money pretty (= quite) soon.

What’s up? (= What’s the matter?)

We must get in touch with them (= contact them) very soon.

Do you fancy going out? (= Would you like to go out?) Note the -ing form after fancy.

When you get (= reach/arrive) there, have a word with (= speak to) someone at reception.

I’m just going to the loo (= toilet).

**C**

**Slang**

This is a form of very informal language. It includes words used by particular groups of people (e.g. some young people may refer to ‘drugs’ as *dope*), and also words which many people think are impolite and unacceptable in most situations. You should probably not use these words, but some of them are quite common. The word *piss* (= urinate / go to the toilet) for example, is often used metaphorically in these slang expressions:

piss off (= go away); he was pissed (= drunk); it’s pissing with rain (= it is raining heavily)
Exercises

99.1 Put the words on the left into the correct columns in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>purchase</th>
<th>handy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loo</td>
<td>resume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thus</td>
<td>terrific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid</td>
<td>commence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apprehend</td>
<td>reckon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now find a synonym for each of the words from this list.

therefore therefore toilet convenient catch/stop start start again
pound think fantastic buy

99.2 Rewrite these sentences in more informal English.

1. When are you going to collect your bicycle?
2. Most of these children are very clever.
3. I think it’ll commence quite soon.
4. Would you like to go out for a meal?
5. My flat is five minutes from where I work, thus it is very convenient.
6. What’s the matter?
7. The man in the market wanted twenty pounds for this ring.
8. Where did you purchase that book?
9. They’ll never apprehend him.
10. I’m just going to the toilet.

99.3 Now rewrite this letter in more suitable formal English.

Dear Mr Collins

We’re really sorry to say that we can’t lend you the sum of five hundred quid that you need, but it may be possible to give you a loan for some of the money.

If you are still interested, do you fancy getting in touch with our main office to fix up an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to talk to you about it.

Yours sincerely

99.4 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is formal or informal. Use your dictionary to find out if these underlined words are either formal or informal.

1. I couldn’t attend the meeting. 4. He’s a nice bloke.
2. I thought the film was a drag. 5. Smoking isn’t permitted.
3. Someone has pinched my pen.
Abbreviations and abbreviated words

A  Letters or words?

Some abbreviations are read as individual letters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BBC</td>
<td></td>
<td>British Broadcasting Organisation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Member of Parliament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td></td>
<td>United Nations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td></td>
<td>Prime Minister</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td></td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU</td>
<td></td>
<td>European Union</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>United States of America</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some abbreviations are read as words.

OPEC /oʊpek/  Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries
AIDS /edʒ/   Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome

Occasionally an abbreviation can be read as individual letters or a word.

VAT /væt/ or V-A-T  Value Added Tax (= a tax on goods/products in EU countries)

B  Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only; they are still pronounced as full words.

Mr /mɪstə/  St. Mark (Saint Mark)
Mrs /mɪsiz/ (= a married woman)  Dean St. (Dean Street)
Ms /məz/ (= a woman who may be single or married)  Dr (Doctor)

C  Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning*</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>/et'setra/</td>
<td>and so on</td>
<td>et cetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td></td>
<td>for example</td>
<td>exempli gratia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td></td>
<td>that's to say,</td>
<td>id est</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: This is also how we say them in spoken English; we write ‘e.g.’ and we say ‘for example’.

D  Shortened words

Some English words can be shortened, and it is very common to meet them in this form, particularly in spoken English. Here are some of the most common:

- phone (telephone)
- fridge (refrigerator)
- bike (bicycle)
- maths (mathematics)
- exam (examination)
- TV/telly (television)
- board (blackboard)
- plane (aeroplane)
- a paper (newspaper)
- case (suitcase)
- photo (photograph)
- mum (mother)
- dad (father)
- ad/advert (advertisement)
- sales rep (sales representative)
- vet (veterinary surgeon)
- PC (personal computer)
- flu (influenza) (= an illness like a cold but more serious)
- lab (laboratory) (= a special room where scientists work)
- language lab (= room where students can listen and repeat using recording equipment)

Note: Most of these words are explained in other parts of the book. Use the index on pages 248–265.
Exercises

100.1 What do these letters stand for? Complete each one.

1 BBC = British .................................................. 5 PM = Prime ..................................................
2 MP = Member of .................................................. 6 UN = United ..................................................
3 EU = European ...................................................... 7 UK = ..................................................
4 VAT = Value ....................................................... 8 OPEC = Organisation of Petroleum

100.2 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

Michael

Peter had a mathematics examination this afternoon and then he had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem (for example, Doctor Brown rings about the influenza vaccination), my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five o'clock.

Margaret (Peter's mother)

100.3 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

1 for example .................................................. 4 in other words
2 and so on ...................................................... 5 Mister
3 Street .......................................................... 6 Doctor

100.4 Complete these sentences with suitable abbreviations or shortened words opposite.

1 If you go to any of the Mediterranean islands .......... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
2 He didn't want to walk so he went on his ..........
3 A: Do you always listen to tapes in the classroom?
   B: No, we sometimes listen in the ..........
4 I asked the teacher to write the word on the ..........
5 If you go there, you can buy books, pens, writing paper ..........
6 She was away from college last week because she had .......... I think she's better now, though.
7 When I decided to sell my records, I put an .......... in the paper and I had three replies the same day.
8 It was a warm day so I put the milk and butter in the ..........
9 If the tickets are very expensive .......... more than $75, don't buy any.
10 I put my .......... in a left luggage locker.

100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

PTO RSVP c/o asap
Answer key

Unit 1

There is no key for this unit.

Unit 2

2.1 Possible answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clothes/accessories</th>
<th>Railways</th>
<th>Words with -ful/-less suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tie</td>
<td>fare</td>
<td>homeless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on</td>
<td>train</td>
<td>painful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouse</td>
<td>get on</td>
<td>careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td>journey</td>
<td>helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumper</td>
<td>station</td>
<td>thoughtless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket</td>
<td>platform</td>
<td>useless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a and c 8 b

2.3 The answers here will depend on your first language; a translation may or may not be suitable for all of the words. Example sentences are a good idea for most words, and there is usually something else that is also useful to know. Here are some suggestions:

dream: noun and verb; as a verb the past tense and past participle can be ‘dreamed’ but more common is ‘dreamt’ /dremt/. As a noun it is used with the verb ‘have’; also useful to learn ‘nightmare’ (= bad dream).

empty: ≠ full. Also useful to learn ‘half-empty’ (= ‘half-full’) but seems more negative.

concentrate: the main stress is on the first syllable, and it is followed by the preposition ‘on’. The noun is ‘concentration’.

forget: irregular verb (forget/forgot/forgotten); ≠ remember.

beard: a picture is the best way to show meaning; it is pronounced /bərd/; also useful to know is ‘moustache’.

rescue: synonym = save; noun and verb.

nearly: synonym = almost; usually goes before the main verb except the verb ‘to be’, e.g. We nearly lost the game; It is nearly 4 o’clock.

knife: a picture is the best way to show meaning; the letter ‘k’ is silent; also important to know are ‘fork’ and ‘spoon’.

2.4 Possible answers

take: a picture/photo, time, a bath, a decision

do: your homework, research, someone a favour, an exam, sport, one’s best, the shopping (food)

make: a mistake, a decision, a mess, a noise, friends, money, coffee

have: a rest, a bath, a drink, a party, a good time

Unit 3

3.1 1 terrible 2 the same as ‘choose’ 3 a verb 4 an adjective 5 uncountable 6 complete/total/utter 7 You must choose between A and B; You can choose from ten different colours 8 See answers to 7

3.2 1 choice 2 advise 3 piece 4 chaotic 5 clean 6 ‘homework’ is school or college work that you do at home; ‘housework’ is work that is necessary in a home e.g. washing, ironing, cleaning 7 win a game 8 gain / put on weight 9 order 10 Is this seat free/taken?
3.3 knife; bomb; psychology; receipt; castle; doubt; wrist; calm

3.4 1 = def. 2  2 = def. 4  3 = def. 1

Unit 4

4.1 1 in Seville (preposition)
2 I spent (pronoun)
3 a beautiful city (indefinite article)
4 expensive hotel (adjective)
5 of money (preposition)
6 wonderful hotel/place (noun)
7 to Spain (preposition)
8 never stays (adverb)

4.2 uncountable noun: time; traffic
plural noun: shorts; jeans
phrasal verb: get in; put on
idiom: get a move on

4.3 1 transitive  3 intransitive  5 transitive
2 intransitive  4 transitive  6 intransitive

4.4 Syllables and main stress (underlined)
One syllable: noun
Two syllables: English; decide; before
Three syllables: informal; understand; adjective; opposite; comfortable (Four syllables are possible here, but the ‘or’ is silent for most native speakers most of the time. /kʌmftəbl/)
Four syllables: education; preposition
Five syllables: pronunciation

4.5 1 adjectives
2 happily; correctly; luckily; surely; possibly
3 happy/content; correct/right; lucky/fortunate; sure/certain; no clear synonym for ‘possible’, although ‘maybe’ and ‘perhaps’ are very similar.
4 unhappy; incorrect; unlucky; unsure; impossible
5 correct

Unit 5

5.1 1 row /raʊ/ and cow /kɔʊ/
2 back /bæk/ and bacon /ˈbeɪkən/
3 soup /ˈsuːp/ and soap /ˈsoʊp/
4 vase /ˈvæs/ and razor /ˈreɪzər/

5.2 1 dream because it is pronounced /driːm/
2 flood because it is pronounced /flud/
3 fast because it is pronounced /fæst/
4 wound because it is pronounced /wʊnd/
5 since because it is pronounced /sɛns/
6 symptom because it is pronounced /ˈsɪmptəm/
5.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>first</th>
<th>second</th>
<th>third</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>policy</td>
<td>cathedral</td>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palace</td>
<td>police</td>
<td>competition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desert</td>
<td>assistance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/ɑ/ appears in:
- cathedral /ˈkæθədral/  understand /ˈʌndərstænd/
- police /ˈpɒlɪs/  competition /ˈkɒmpətɪʃən/
- opposite /ˈɒpəsɪt/  advertisement /əˌdəvəˈtɪsmənt/
- education /ˌɛdʒuˈkeɪʃən/  desert /ˈdezət/
- assistance /ˈɑːstəns/  organise /ˈɔːɡənaɪz/

5.4

**Same**
- know/knife
- muscle/scissors
- climb/bomb
- wrong/wrist
- calf/calm

**Different**
- island/islam (s in island is silent)
- aisle/Christmas (s in aisle is silent)
- listen/western (t in listen is silent)
- hand/handsome (d in handsome is silent)
- honest/hope (h in honest is silent)

**Unit 6**

6.2

1 writing  2 a cassette  3 an OHT  4 notes/papers  5 notes/books  6 a plug
7 look up the meaning of a word  8 rub things out / erase them  9 photocopy things
10 because people can’t hear it very well

6.3

1 clean the board  2 turn up the tape recorder  3 borrow a dictionary  4 swap places
5 video a programme  6 do an exercise  7 correct mistakes  8 look up a word
9 plug in the OHP / tape recorder

6.5

A: What does ‘swap’ mean?
A: How do you pronounce it?
A: How do you spell it?
A: How do you use it in a sentence?

**Unit 7**

7.1

unhappy; impatient; impolite; illegal
incorrect; irregular; invisible; impossible
illegible; unfriendly; unemployed; dishonest
unpack; unlock; disagree; dislike

7.2

1 it’s illegal  3 he got undressed  5 she’s very impatient
2 it’s very untidy  4 it’s illegible  6 impolite

7.3

1 misunderstood  4 disagree  7 unlock  10 reopen
2 unpacked  5 redo  8 disliked  11 overworking
3 disappeared  6 overslept  9 redo/retake  12 unwrap

**Unit 8**

8.1

education; improvement; jogging; government; spelling; hesitation; arrangement;
stupidity; darkness; weakness; similarity; punctuality; sadness; popularity.
### Unit 9

#### 9.1 Thoughtful/less
- attractive
- careful/less
- creative
- dangerous
- foggy
- famous
- homeless
- useful/less

#### 9.2 Cold/less
- dirty
- painful/less
- comfortable
- famous
- (un)suitable
- (un)reliable
- musical
- (un)breakable

#### 9.3 Painless; useless; careless; thoughtless; tactless*
*If someone is 'tactful' they are diplomatic, i.e. they always say the right things. If you are tactless, you are always saying the wrong thing and might be offending someone.

**Opposites for the other words:**
- wonderful (≠ terrible, awful)
- awful (≠ wonderful, fantastic)
- beautiful (≠ ugly)

#### 9.4 Possible answers

| 1. cloudy, sunny, foggy | 2. dangerous, careless, thoughtless, awful | 3. musical, creative, famous | 4. industrial, famous, beautiful, dirty, attractive | 5. famous, creative, knowledgeable | 6. reliable, comfortable, economical | 7. political, enjoyable, thoughtful | 8. ? |

### Unit 10

#### 10.1

1. We waited a long time.
2. I dreamed about you last night.
3. We queued for half an hour.
4. The holiday cost about £500.
5. I replied to his letter yesterday.
I'll give him a ring this evening.
I go on a diet if I put on weight.
It was very hot, so we had a rest for a while after lunch.
I put on the brakes but I still couldn't stop in time.
He gave me a push.
Did you have a look in the paper?

It was very hot, so we had a rest for a while after lunch.
I put on the brakes but I still couldn't stop in time.
He gave me a push.
Did you have a look in the paper?

same meaning
similar (but not exactly the same because 'to water' means 'to pour water over something that is growing'.)
completely different (the verb 'to book' = 'to reserve')
completely different ('a break' is a rest; 'to break a leg' = to fracture the leg)
similar (but not exactly the same because 'a run' here is not just the action of running; it is an activity that the person chooses to do.)

Unit 11

Possible answers

Money: credit card, cheque book, box office (where you buy tickets), income tax
Roads: traffic lights, traffic jam, pedestrian crossing, parking meter, traffic warden
Things we wear: T-shirt, sunglasses, earring
People: baby-sitter, brother-in-law, film star, pop star

Possible answers

1 traffic jam 2 film star 3 alarm clock 4 waiting room 5 baby sitter 6 sunglasses 7 income tax 8 parking meter 9 first aid box 10 science fiction

Possible answers

sitting room; waiting room
pop star; rock star
birthday card; postcard
toothbrush (= what you clean your teeth with)
traffic jam, traffic warden
sunshade (= parasol); suntan (= when your body goes brown from the sun)
box office, postbox
hairdresser (= person who cuts your hair)

Possible answers

notebook (= a book of plain paper to write notes)
textbook (= a book used for study, especially in schools)
cookery book (= a book that tells you how to prepare and cook food)
technology book (= the book with telephone numbers; also called a telephone directory)
bookcase (= a piece of furniture with shelves for books)
book shop
greetings card, e.g. birthday card, Christmas card
ticket card (= a ticket for travel on buses and trains for a period)
phone card (to use with certain telephones)
postcard
Unit 12

12.1 good-looking brand-new well-known badly-written
easy-going part-time north-east left-handed
ten-pound first-class short-sleeved second-hand

12.2 Possible answers
well-done; well-made; well-built; well-dressed
badly-written; badly-designed
right-handed; left-handed
part-time; full-time
north-east; south-east

12.3 1 sleeved 4 new 7 part 10 minute 13 pound
2 star 5 east/west 8 written 11 hand 14 known
3 handed 6 behaved 9 off 12 looking 15 going

Unit 13

13.1 heavy smoker; heavy traffic; heavy rain
miss a bus; miss a person; miss a lesson
tell a joke; tell a lie; tell the truth; tell a story

13.2 1 dry wine 3 weak coffee 5 get off the bus 7 miss the bus
2 a slight accent 4 a loud voice 6 tell a lie 8 get out of the car

13.3 1 terribly; missed 5 start 9 strong
2 told 6 made 10 missed
3 starting 7 vitally
4 runs 8 heavy; highly

13.4 1 large size 2 wide range 3 broad shoulders 4 vast majority

Unit 14

14.1 Prepositions and possible replies
1 about; I've no idea.
2 at; French and German.
3 for; Her brother, I think.
4 for; Assistant manager.
5 to; I think it's a comedy programme.
6 about; She said the vegetables were cold.
7 for; The fact that she was late twice last week.
8 to; The man over there.
9 at; One of the students in her class.
10 in; Thrillers, I think.
11 on; How much it costs, I expect.
12 of; The fact that she can't get out. She's claustrophobic, you see.

14.2 1 c 2 j 3 a 4 l 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 k 9 g 10 i 11 e 12 f
14.3 Possible answers
1 to the waiter / about it
2 to my brother/sister
3 for a job with a charity / in a developing country
4 at English
5 from hay fever
6 in languages
7 on opera
8 of flying
9 from English people
10 London; by/at the number of parks

14.4 fond of; concentrate on; responsible for; rely on

Unit 15
15.1 1 on 3 on 5 on 7 for 9 on 11 in 13 by 15 on 17 at 19 by
2 by 4 on 6 by 8 in 10 by 12 on 14 by 16 in 18 at 20 at

15.2 1 by myself / on my own 5 on TV 9 at the moment
2 in time 6 by mistake 10 by chance
3 out of work 7 in the end
4 on the phone 8 at the end

15.3 1 No, she hit him by accident.
2 No, they went on foot (or by bus, by taxi, by train).
3 No, they’re here on business.
4 No, I saw it on TV (or ‘I heard about it on the radio’).
5 No, he did it by himself / on his own.
6 No, I’m in a hurry.

Unit 16
16.1 1 picked 3 gone 5 gets 7 look 9 go
2 found 4 get 6 gone 8 carry 10 run

16.2 Possible answers
1 her illness
2 bread/coffee/sugar etc.
3 in a dictionary
4 my boss / my parents / the neighbours / my teacher etc.
5 her coat / her jacket / her gloves etc.
6 the fire
7 the cat / the children etc.
8 the car
9 early/late etc.
10 by ten pounds / next week etc.

16.3 1 = def 6 2 = def 2 3 = def 4 4 = def 3 5 = def 1

16.4 See Page 36 for examples.
Unit 17

17.1 Possible answers
1 excuses/stories
2 on the bed/on the floor
3 the TV/the light/the fire
4 my flat/my house
5 the problem/the mess/the central heating
6 tonight/on Saturday evening
7 the second question/the final part
8 just outside London
9 on your salary/on seventy pounds
10 in a small town/by the sea

17.2
1 no
2 yes (put the fire out)
3 yes (turn the radio on)
4 no
5 no
6 yes (made that story up)
7 no
8 no
9 yes (turn the light off)
10 yes (leave this question out)

17.3
1 The cost of living is going up all the time and I find it quite difficult to get by on my salary. But I think I can probably carry on for a few months.
2 She told us to come in but then we had to take off our shoes and I had to put out my cigarette.
3 The teacher told the class to make up a story to go with the picture in their books, and then carry on with Exercise 3. She said they could all leave out Exercise 4.

17.4 Unit 21: get on (with someone); get on (= make progress); get up
Unit 47: grow up; go out (with); split up; break up
Unit 48: wake up; get up; stay in; go out; come round
Unit 56: take sth. off; hang sth. up; put sth. on; try sth. on
Unit 62: get on; get off; get in(to); get out of
Unit 75: turn sth. on/off; turn sth. up/down; switch on/off/over; plug sth. in

Unit 18

18.1 1 feel like = want/desire
2 for good = for ever
3 tied-up = busy
4 pulling sb.’s leg = joking by saying that something is true when in fact it is not true.
5 make do = manage

18.2 1 hang on
2 a short cut
3 go ahead
4 make it; Never mind
5 What’s up?
6 Keep an eye on
7 get a move on
8 make up your mind

18.3 1 start; matters
2 turns
3 -hand
4 talk
5 do; term

18.4 Examples
have something/nothing/a little in common = to have similar interests (If you ‘have nothing in common’, it means you don’t have similar interests.)
mad about something = to like something very much
get on someone’s nerves = to make someone angry or irritable by your behaviour.
Unit 19

19.1 1 do 3 make 5 take 7 do 9 doing 2 have 4 do 6 take and do 8 take and make 10 made

19.2 1 have a drink 5 I’m thirsty 8 take/make a decision 2 make 6 do my shopping 9 had a good time 3 do the housework 7 make money 10 making progress

4 had

19.3 Possible answers
1 My mother had to do a lot of housework, so I agreed to do the shopping for her.
2 A couple asked me to do them a favour and take a picture of them. or I made friends with a couple of people and took some photos of them.
3 I went to the disco and had a great time, but unfortunately I had to do an exam today, which was very difficult.

Unit 20

20.1 break a record / the law; catch the ball / a bus / a cold; keep in touch / a record; give my regards to / me a hand

20.2 1 see 3 give 5 catch 7 keep 9 break 2 keep 4 see 6 keep 8 caught 10 see

20.3 1 break the ice 3 catch a bus 2 give him/her a hand 4 broke the record

Unit 21

21.1 1 buy 3 arrive 5 obtain* 7 becoming 9 receive 2 fetch 4 became 6 receive 8 buy 10 arrive *obtain is used more frequently in written English than in spoken English.

21.2 1 It’s getting cold in here. 4 It’s getting late 2 I’m getting hungry 5 It’s getting dark 3 I’m getting hot 6 I’m getting worse at English

21.3 1 getting ready to go out 4 get on very well with my boss 2 get dressed very quickly 5 get rid of most of these chairs 3 get to know people in this country 6 How are you getting on?

Unit 22

22.1 1 going 2 coming 3 go 4 take 5 taking (‘bringing’ is also possible here if the speaker already imagines himself at the party) 6 bring 7 go 8 come

22.2 1 doing 3 turn 5 take me 2 try 4 How are you? 6 How are you getting on?

22.3 1 shopping 3 for a drink 5 for a swim 2 for a meal / for something to eat 4 sightseeing; for a drive/walk 6 riding

22.4 1 deaf 2 bankrupt 3 grey 4 bald 5 mad
Unit 23

23.1 1 very/terribly/really/awfully 5 apologise; matter
2 I'm; held; problem 6 long; never
3 keep; mind 7 beg; worry
4 kind 8 sort

23.2 Possible answers
1 I’m terribly sorry / I beg your pardon.
2 I'm sorry I'm late but I missed the bus.
3 Oh thank you. That's very kind of you.
4 Don't worry. It doesn't matter.
5 Thank you for inviting me. / Thank you for a lovely dinner/meal.
6 Never mind. Don’t worry. I'll sort it out.
7 I would like to apologise for not coming to your office last week. Unfortunately, ...
8 Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately we had a fire at the factory last month, and this has resulted in ...

Unit 24

24.1 A: Would you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid I haven't got any money, (omit 'but')
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about going to see a film?
B: No, actually I think I'd rather stay at home and do my homework? (omit 'to' before 'rather')
A: Why don't you do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?
B: Yeah fine. / Good idea.
A: Great. What film shall we go to?
B: I don't mind.

24.2 1 possibly; sure / of course
2 wondering; love to
3 shall; don't; good/great idea
4 shall; how about; could; rather; like
5 would; mind

24.3 Possible answers
1 Yeah sure 5 I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't
2 Yes of course 6 Yeah great
3 I'm afraid not 7 Yes that's a good idea
4 Yes, I'd love to 8 Yes if you like

Unit 25

25.1 Any combination of these question beginnings:
What do you think of ...
What do you feel about ...
What are your feelings about ...

25.2 1 of; personally ('actually' would also be correct here)
2 according
3 extent
4 concerned
5 totally ('completely' would also be correct here)
25.3 Possible answers
1 Personally I don’t think you can learn a language in three months.
2 In my opinion the club needs to buy new players.
3 Yes, I agree with you.
4 The newspaper says that terrorists started the fire.
5 I partly agree with her.

25.4 Possible answers
1 Yeah maybe, but I think there are lots of women who don’t want to do that.
2 Yes I agree to some extent, but how do you decide if someone doesn’t want to work?
3 Yes, I think you’re right.
4 You could be right but don’t you think that more people would take drugs if we did that?
5 Yes I agree to a large extent – it can lead to a lot of conflict between countries.

Unit 26
26.1 1 Happy Christmas or Merry Christmas
2 Happy Birthday (or Many Happy Returns)
3 Happy New Year
4 Congratulations
5 Good luck
6 See you soon

26.2 1 How do you do?; How do you do?
2 Bless you
3 Have a nice/good weekend; Yes, same to you.
4 Cheers; Cheers

26.3 1 ‘Excuse me’ is enough here, but you could add a little more, e.g. ‘Excuse me for one moment’
or ‘Excuse me, I won’t be long’.
2 Sorry? (with rising intonation)
3 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. / Nice to have met you.
4 Excuse me.
5 Goodnight. (See you in the morning / tomorrow.)
6 Excuse me. (You would probably add something like ‘I think you’ve dropped something’.)
7 Congratulations
8 Good luck

26.4 We use ‘hard luck’ to someone who has just failed in something, e.g. failed an exam
We ask people to ‘say cheese’ when we are about to take a picture of them.
We say ‘watch out’ as a warning e.g. to warn someone crossing a road that a cyclist is right
behind them and could hit them if they aren’t careful.
We say ‘I beg your pardon’ in many situations when we also say ‘sorry’ e.g. you step on someone’s
foot; you interrupt someone. It is more formal.
We say ‘I’ve no idea’ to show that we definitely do not know the answer to something; in some
cases we say it because we are annoyed at being asked the question.

Unit 27
27.1 1 I need some information.
2 We had lovely weather.
3 The furniture is very old.
4 I’m looking for a new pair of jeans. or I’m looking for some new jeans.
5 Your hair is getting very long.
6 Do you have any scissors? or Do you have a pair of scissors?
7 We had a lot of homework yesterday.
8 Do you think she's making progress with her English?
9 These trousers are too small.
10 She gave me some good advice.

27.2 countable: cup; grape; coin
uncountable: butter; travel; housework; money; spaghetti; insurance
countable and uncountable:
television  U e.g. Television is bad for your eyes.
            C e.g. We bought a new television yesterday.
work       U e.g. Most people enjoy their work.
            C e.g. The Mona Lisa is a famous work of art.
coffee     U e.g. I love coffee.
            C e.g. I sat down and ordered a coffee (i.e. cup of coffee).

27.3 1 some scissors / a pair of scissors  5 some scales
2 some sunglasses / a pair of sunglasses  6 some headphones
3 some advice  7 some / a pair of (warm) pyjamas
4 some furniture  8 to do more homework

27.4 uncountable nouns: traffic; news
plural nouns: roadworks; authorities

Unit 28

28.1 1 to work  3 going  5 to drive / driving  7 to work / working  9 to finish
2 to help  4 to take  6 eating  8 going  10 helping

28.2 Possible ways to complete Part C.
1 to have a successful career; to be happy; to have children
2 doing housework; waiting at bus stops; going to the dentist
3 getting up late; walking in the country; going shopping
4 walking long distances; doing sport; drinking coffee
5 to live until they are 75; to have some disappointments; to meet a person they will love
6 making their bed; cooking their dinner; tidying up
7 come home at a certain time; tidy their own rooms; get up at a certain time
8 get up when they like; do what they like; have parties at their home

28.3 1 He let her go on holiday with her friends.
2 He offered to lend her the money for the hotel.
3 He refused to pay for the flight and her entertainment.
4 She promised to bring him back a present and repay her loan in six months.
5 They decided to go to the south of France for two weeks.

Unit 29

29.1 1 She said the film was terrible.
2 He told me it's not possible.
3 Can you explain what to do?
4 She suggested that we go to ... / she suggested going to ...
5 Can we discuss my report?
6 I want him to leave.
7 I apologised for my mistake.
9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.
10 She insisted on paying.
Possible answers
1 that we go for a meal. 6 him to go.
2 them to be quiet. 7 her to go home.
3 it was great. 8 the manager for the defeat.
4 it in class. 9 them not to drink it.
5 on going with her / that we go together 10 how it works.

order
1 + object, e.g. He ordered a meal.
2 + object + infinitive, e.g. He ordered us to leave.

recommend
1 + object, e.g. She recommended the school.
2 + ‘that’ clause, e.g. She recommended that we stay in a hotel.
3 + preposition, e.g. What would you recommend for young children?
4 + (object) + -ing, e.g. I recommend (you) reading the book before you see the film.

prevent
1 + object, e.g. I couldn’t prevent the accident.
2 + object + preposition, e.g. They prevented us from leaving.

Unit 30

30.1 big/enormous or huge  hot/boiling
small/tiny  cold/freezing
tired/exhausted  bad/awful or terrible or dreadful
surprised/astonished  hungry/starving
interesting/fascinating  frightened/terrified

30.2 Sample answer
Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is fantastic – we’ve got a huge room and the food is wonderful. It’s been boiling every day so far, so we’ve spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else – it’s absolutely packed. But the sea is actually freezing – that’s because it’s the Atlantic coast, I suppose.
Tomorrow we’re going to walk to a tiny seaside village about ten kilometres from here – I imagine I’ll be really exhausted by the time we get back, but it does sound a fascinating place and I’m looking forward to it.
I’ll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it. Until then,

30.3 1 exhausted  2 fascinating  3 terrifying  4 astonished  5 freezing
30.4 1 exhausted  2 disappointed  3 embarrassed  4 confused  5 astonished

Unit 31

31.1 1 on 2 in  3 at  4 at  5 in  6 on  7 on  8 at  9 on  10 in

31.2 1 No, behind the picture.
2 No, down the hill.
3 No, under the fence.
4 No, I saw her get out of the car.
5 No, above the clouds.
6 No, the flat below me.
Unit 32

32.1 1 My brother often visits us on Sunday.
2 She hardly ever phones me.
3 I have never broken my leg.
4 I hardly saw him during his visit.
5 I occasionally get up early, (‘occasionally’ could also begin or end the sentence)
6 She is always early for work on a Monday.

32.2 1 hardly ever / rarely 2 hardly 3 nearly 4 slightly 5 incredibly

32.3 1 No it was rather interesting (actually)
2 No they were rather quiet (actually)
3 No, it’s rather clean (actually)
4 No, it was rather good (actually)

32.4 1 I thought they were extremely good.
2 He’s been getting very good marks in his exams.
3 John said the flat was fairly / quite / a bit small.
4 They said it was a bit boring.
5 The clothes were quite/fairly expensive.

Unit 33

33.1 1 get 2 while 3 leaving 4 eventually/finally 5 just as 6 while/as

33.2 Possible answers

1 we went for a swim. 5 John looked up the other half.
2 I have finished here. 6 the bus arrived.
3 leaving. 7 you are not insured to drive it.
4 I was getting out of the car. 8 I was coming round the corner.

33.3 Possible answers

1 And for another, I’ve got lots of work to do.
2 Then finally we came back through the Loire valley and stayed in Tours for a couple of days.
3 besides/anyway, we can’t really afford it.

33.4 Possible answer

Dear Sir
I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Malvern Hotel and I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with the food and service provided in your restaurant.

To begin with, there was very little variety in the food and sometimes no choice at all. Secondly, the service was very slow most of the time and we had to wait half an hour between courses. And finally, when we complained to the head waiter about these delays, he was very rude and the service did not improve.

I sincerely hope that immediate action will be taken to improve this situation, and I shall expect a letter of apology and explanation for this very poor standard of service in a hotel with such a fine reputation.

Yours faithfully
Unit 34

34.1 1 although  4 even though  7 however  10 also
2 in spite of  5 whereas  8 too / as well
3 in spite of / despite  6 In addition / Moreover  9 on the other hand

34.2 He went to school today even though he didn’t feel very well.
He always did his best at school whereas most of his friends were very lazy.
He’s got the right qualifications. What’s more, he’s the most experienced.
He didn’t pass the exam in spite of the help I gave him.
He decided to take the job. However, the pay isn’t very good.

34.3 1 despite / in spite of
2 whereas
3 furthermore / in addition / moreover / what’s more
4 although / even though / despite the fact that
5 however / on the other hand
6 as well / too

34.4 Possible answers
1 she spoke very quickly.  4 it’s much cheaper.
2 the others couldn’t.  5 I think they’ll probably pass.
3 the bad weather.  6 I wasn’t bored at all.

Unit 35

35.1 1 similar
2 unlike / different from
3 a lot in common
4 in common
5 live at home / have jobs / like sport / want to become managers
6 went to university

35.2 1 Martin is very different from his brother.
2 The flats are very good value compared with/to the houses.
3 Everyone in the class passed the exam except Carla.
4 The two boys have nothing in common.
5 You don’t have to wear a tie apart from (on) Saturday(s).

35.3 1 otherwise  2 in case  3 unless  4 as long as

35.4 Possible answers
1 have to finish it at the weekend.
2 a member.
3 pay me back before next week.
4 my cousin comes to stay for a few days.
5 I have to.
6 I want to buy anything.
Unit 36

36.1 1 I didn’t phone you as/since/because it was very late. or
It was very late so I didn’t phone you.
2 I turned up the radio in the lounge so (that) I could hear it in the kitchen.
3 The restaurant was full so we went to the bar next door. or
We went to the bar next door as/since/because the restaurant was full.
4 I stayed at home as/since/because I was expecting a phone call. or
I was expecting a phone call so I stayed at home.
5 It’s a very large city so you have to use public transport a lot. or
You have to use public transport a lot as/since/because it’s a very large city.
6 I learnt to drive so that my mother didn’t have to take me to ... (purpose)
I learnt to drive, so my mother didn’t have to take me to ... (result)

36.2 It is possible to use ‘because of / due to / owing to’ in all of the answers.
1 She got the job because of her excellent qualifications.
2 We couldn’t eat outside owing to the terrible weather.
3 She had to stay at home because of her broken ankle.
4 The referee had to stop the game owing to the bad light.
5 The flowers died because of the dry weather.
6 Owing to the heavy traffic, I was half an hour late. or
I was half an hour late due to the heavy traffic

36.3 1 as/since  2 cause / lead to  3 so that  4 lead to  5 therefore

36.4 Possible answers
1 I want to improve my English because I will need it in my job very soon.
2 I bought myself a walkman so that I could listen to English cassettes on the bus.
3 I study English at the weekend as I am very busy during the week.
4 I always write words down in my notebook so that I don’t forget them.
5 I don’t get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently I find it difficult to
remember everything I study.
6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, he gets a lot of opportunities to
practise his English.
7 If he could speak almost perfect English, it could lead to a job in Britain or America.
8 Some people find English difficult because of the pronunciation.

Unit 37

37.1 1 an ocean  4 a desert  7 a group of islands  10 mountain
2 a mountain range  5 a jungle (a rainforest)  8 a continent  11 Lakes
3 a country  6 a sea  9 islands  12 stars

37.2 My journey took me across the Atlantic Ocean from Europe to South America. I travelled through
the Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of Brazil as far as the Iguacu Falls. From
there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed
the Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to Jamaica in the
West Indies.

37.3 1 hurricane  2 flood  3 drought  4 earthquake  5 volcano
Unit 38
38.1 1 foggy  2 snowing  3 cloudy  4 pouring with rain  5 icy  6 sunny
38.2 1 false  3 true  5 false  7 false  9 true  2 true  4 true  6 true  8 true  10 false
38.3 The missing words are
breeze; gale
boiling; freezing
38.4 1 blows  2 hot  3 winds  4 snows  5 spell  6 heavy  7 humid

Unit 39
39.1 1 plant trees (you can ‘plant plants’ but it sounds unnatural. In this case you would probably say: ‘We’re going to put some plants in’.  2 water trees/plants  3 pick apples  4 extract coal  5 grow wheat/apples/trees/plants  6 slaughter cows
39.2 1 true  2 true  3 false (a long period without rain)  4 true  5 false (a period when we take crops from the ground)  6 false
39.3 1 a tin can  2 a silver spoon  3 a knife with a steel blade  4 a frying pan with a copper base  5 a gold wedding ring  6 these iron bars are very strong
39.4 1 vegetable  2 metal  3 dairy  4 cereal  5 crop(s)

Unit 40
40.1 1 same /ə/  5 same /ə/  8 different /ə; /ə:/  2 different /e; /əu/  6 different /æ; /o/  9 same /p/  3 different /ei; /i:/  7 different /æ; /ei/  10 same /æo/  4 different /ʒ; /dʒ/
40.2 Suggested answers
Farm animals: pig, cow, horse, chicken, sheep, goat
Wild animals: lion, tiger, elephant, monkey, camel, leopard, bear
Insects: fly, mosquito, wasp, ant, butterfly
40.3 Possible answers
1 eagles  6 blue whales  2 whales or sharks  7 monkeys or giraffes  3 monkeys or dogs are the most probable answer  8 snakes  4 leopards, lions, tigers and other big cats  9 elephants  5 camels  10 sheep
40.4 Possible answers
1 mouse/rabbit
2 pigs/horses/chickens
3 leopards (panthers and cheetahs would also be possible)
4 ants/flies/wasps (cockroaches would also be possible)
5 camels

40.5 golden eagle = 270 kph when they dive (= fly in a downward direction)
lion = 80 kph shark = 64 kph rabbit = 56 kph elephant = 40 kph pig = 18 kph
spider = 1.88 kph snail = 0.05 kph

Unit 41

41.1 1 Great Britain, the United States of America, Canada, Australia, New Zealand
2 Portuguese
3 Dutch
4 Swiss-German, French, Italian. A small number of people also speak a language called Romansch.
5 Arabic
6 Swedish
7 Spanish
8 Egyptian
9 Hebrew
10 China

41.2 Japan Japanese Brazilian Egyptian Arabic Italian Austria Australia
Chinese Portuguese Saudi Arabia
Words ending -ia usually have the stress on the third syllable from the end.
Words ending -ian usually have the main stress on the second syllable from the end.
Words ending -ese usually have the stress on the final syllable, i.e. on the -ese.

41.3 Possible answers
1 The Japanese 3 Brazilians 5 The Swiss
2 Israelis 4 The British 6 Greeks

41.4 1 Thailand 3 Turkey 5 Egypt 7 Greece 9 Sweden
2 Argentina 4 South Korea 6 Saudi Arabia 8 Israel 10 Portugal

41.5 1 Russian 4 Japanese 7 Dutch 10 French
2 Korean 5 Greek 8 Spanish 11 Swedish
3 Italian 6 Chinese 9 Swiss German

Unit 42

42.1 1 forehead 8 foot 15 wrist
2 cheek 9 toe 16 hand
3 chin 10 finger 17 bottom
4 chest 11 neck 18 thigh
5 arm 12 shoulder 19 heel
6 hip 13 waist
7 knee 14 elbow
42.2
1 blow your nose  
2 shake hands  
3 comb your hair  
4 fold your arms  
5 bend your knees  
6 nod your head  
7 bite your nails

42.3
1 they’re happy or being polite  
2 running  
3 they’re happy or when someone says something funny  
4 when they’re nervous  
5 when they have a cold  
6 when they want to say ‘no’  
7 when they mean ‘yes’  
8 when they’re sad, unhappy, or possibly when they’re very happy  
9 they’re tired or bored

42.4

Unit 43
43.1
1 hair  
2 skin  
3 hair  
4 height/build  
5 shoulders  
6 chests  
7 beard/moustache  
8 arms/legs  
9 looking  
10 hair/skin/eyes

43.2
1 beautiful/pretty  
2 plain  
3 overweight  
4 thin  
5 good-looking/handsome

43.3
What does he/she look like?  
How tall is he/she?  
How much does he/she weigh?

Unit 44
44.1
Positive

clever  
nice  
relaxed  
hard-working  
cheerful  
generous

Negative

stupid  
unpleasant  
tense  
lazy  
miserable  
mean

44.2
unkind; unfriendly; unreliable; unambitious; unpleasant  
inflexible; insensitive  
dishonest

44.3
1 mean  
2 has no initiative / doesn’t use her initiative  
3 unreliable  
4 punctual  
5 lazy  
6 shy  
7 flexible  
8 sensitive  
9 insensitive  
10 ambitious
punctuality; optimism/optimist (person); reliability; laziness
confidence; generosity; ambition; stupidity
sensitivity; strength; flexibility; shyness

Unit 45

anger; sadness; happiness; pride; jealousy; embarrassment

45.2 1 b 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 c 6 d

45.4 1 people strolling 4 someone whispering
2 soldiers marching 5 someone shouting and pointing his finger at someone
3 someone pressing a button

45.5 1 glanced 3 strolled 5 stared
2 whispered 4 march 6 punched

Unit 46

1 John is Jill’s brother-in-law.
2 Timothy is Jill’s nephew.
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy’s cousins.
4 Eve is Sheila’s niece.
5 Albert Dodds is Tom’s grandfather.
6 Barry is Eve’s uncle.
7 Susan is Timothy’s aunt.
8 As Paul died in 1995, Jill is a widow.
9 Tom is Mary’s grandson.
10 The only two people who are not related are John and Sheila.

Unit 47

47.1 1 toddler 5 their early thirties 9 an adult
2 retired 6 elderly 10 adolescence
3 mid twenties 7 baby
4 in her late forties / middle-aged 8 teenager

47.2 1 true
2 false: He grew up in the south of England.
3 false: He went out with Anthea for three years.
4 false: They split up because they had lots of rows.
5 true
6 false: Maureen got pregnant a year after they got married.
7 false: Maureen is now expecting her second child.
8 false: Sam left Maureen.

47.3 1 e 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 i 6 h 7 d 8 b 9 g

Unit 48

48.1 have lunch; dinner; a nap; a lie-in; a late night / an early night; a wash; a shave; a bath; a break; a rest.

48.2 1 fall asleep 4 play cards 7 feed the dog
2 do the ironing 5 go to bed 8 get up early
3 have a rest 6 clean my teeth
48.3 1 bother 3 stay in 5 lie-in 7 on my own / by myself
2 go out 4 early 6 come round

Unit 49
49.1 1 yes 2 yes 3 no 4 shut 5 three 6 no 7 no 8 no
49.2 1 gate; path; doorbell 3 view 5 belongs; condition
2 climb; lift 4 rent 6 heat; heating
49.3 Possible answers
Positive
the rooms are very light
a good view
quiet
large rooms
in good condition

Negative
the rooms are very dark
no view
noisy
small rooms
in bad condition
draughty

Unit 50
50.1 Possible answers
1 sleep
2 cooking and washing-up
3 wash and shower (and bath)
4 sit and relax (and watch TV)
5 eat meals
6 guests sleep / where you keep things you don’t use all the time.
7 work/study
8 you have a washing machine / tumble dryer (= machine to dry clothes)

50.2 1 in the fridge 4 in the dishwasher
2 in the oven 5 in the cupboard
3 in the washing machine 6 in the cupboard

50.3 sink; curtains; carpet; dishwasher; kettle; sofa; oven; fridge; armchair; cupboard; saucepan

50.4 1 in 2 out; back 3 on; in 4 on 5 in 6 out; on

50.6 Possible answers
1 oven, TV, radio, hi-fi, washing machine, dishwasher
2 plates, cups, saucers, saucepans, glasses, knives and forks
3 chair, stool, armchair, sofa
4 kettle, saucepan

Unit 51
51.1 1 I cleaned my teeth 5 I had a wash
2 I went to sleep 6 I put on my pyjamas
3 I set the alarm clock 7 I got into bed
4 I switched off the light

Possible order: 5, 1 (or 1, 5), 6, 3, (could be 3, 6), 7, 4, 2. There are, of course, other variations
e.g. you might get into bed and then set the alarm clock; etc.
51.2 1 She did the shopping. 4 She hoovered the carpet / did the hoovering.
2 She ironed something. 5 She did the washing.
3 She did the washing-up. 6 She made the bed.

51.3 1 no 3 yes 5 no 7 yes
2 two 4 three 6 yes 8 no

Unit 52

52.1 Infinitive Past tense Past participle
burn burnt (also burned) burnt (also burned)
break broke broken
drop dropped dropped
spill spilt (also spilled) spilt (also spilled)
trip tripped tripped
lose lost lost
leave left left

52.2 1 f 2 g 3 e 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 d

52.3 1 someone broke some glasses
2 he has a stain on his trousers
3 he burnt his shirt

52.4 Possible answers
1 I dropped it.
2 I'm afraid there's something wrong with it.
3 I tripped over.
4 It's not working properly.
5 I'm afraid I lost it.
6 I left it at home.
7 It's not working.
8 It's out of order.

Unit 53

53.1 1 sold; bought 3 paid 5 won
2 lost; cost; found 4 gave; spent 6 wasted

53.2 1 How much is your gold ring worth?
2 I'm afraid I can't afford it. or I'm afraid I can't afford to go.
3 Could you lend me some money?
4 How much did your dictionary cost? or
   How much did you pay for your dictionary?

53.3 1 yes 2 no 3 yes 4 no 5 yes 6 no 7 no 8 no

Unit 54

54.1 1 a cough, sore throat, sneezing
2 a cough, sore throat, sneezing, temperature, aching muscles
3 runny nose, sneezing, sore eyes
4 headache
5 keep going to the toilet
6 difficulty in breathing

54.2 1 different /dɪ/ /dæɪ/ 4 different /ɒə/ /ɑːr/
2 same /æ/ 5 different /æː/ /æːr/
3 same /ɔː/ 6 different /ɒ/ /ʌ/
I had terrible toothache, so I made an appointment to see the dentist. He had a look at the tooth and decided that I needed a filling. It was quite a big one, so I had an injection first. Afterwards it felt so much better.

**Possible answers**
1 hurts  3 ache  5 lung  7 asthma  9 myself
2 attack  4 pain  6 prescription  8 disease  10 aches

**Unit 55**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>blood</td>
<td>bleed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>wound</td>
<td>bandage</td>
<td>bandage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury</td>
<td>injure</td>
<td>bruise</td>
<td>bruise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>treatment</td>
<td>treat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Model answer**

Paul somehow fell from the tree where he was picking apples and he knocked himself unconscious. His wife immediately rang for an ambulance and it soon arrived and rushed him to hospital. He was suffering from concussion and had to have some stitches for a large cut on the side of his head, but fortunately it was nothing more serious than that.

**Possible answers**

1. I was preparing the dinner and I cut my finger on the vegetable knife.
2. He was in a fight and someone gave him a black eye.
3. I was running for a bus and I hit my foot on something on the pavement and fell over.
4. We were running for the same ball; I’m afraid I didn’t see him and he didn’t see me, and we collided.

**Unit 56**

**Possible answers**

- shoes, socks, jeans, trousers, shorts, gloves, tights

4, 7, 1, 3, 5, 9, 2, 8, 6

**Possible answers**

- an earring, a ring, a button, a pocket, a necklace, gloves.

**Most likely answers**

1. blouse or *top; skirt  3. tie; shirt  5. too; enough
2. suit; trousers  4. enough; size
   (*top is a general word)

**Possible answers**

- worn by women: dress, blouse, skirt, tights, necklace
- worn by both: hat, gloves, jeans, trousers, jacket, scarf, coat, shirt

**Unit 57**

1. clothes  3. electrical appliances  5. toys
2. furniture  4. household goods  6. stationery
57.2 newsagent: envelopes, a newspaper  
chemist: toothbrush, aspirin  
department store: envelopes, an armchair, gloves (and possibly the apples, carrots, coca cola, chicken and a loaf of bread)  
butcher: a chicken  
greengrocer: apples and carrots  
supermarket: a chicken, a toothbrush, a loaf of bread, coca cola, apples, carrots, a newspaper  

Other things you could buy in each shop:  
newsagent: cigarettes, sweets, greeting cards  
chemist: soap, shampoo, perfume, toothpaste  
department store: clothes, washing machines, saucepans  
butcher: steak, sausages, bacon, lamb  
greengrocer: onions, oranges, peas, lemons  
supermarket: coffee, wine, cakes, biscuits, cheese  

57.3 1 boutique 3 shop/sales assistant 5 till / cash desk 7 butcher('s)  
2 shopping centre 4 changing/fitting room 6 window shopping 8 chemist('s)  

57.4 1 looking for 3 being served 5 take it  
2 size 4 changing room 6 till / cash desk  

Unit 58  
58.1 1 peas/potato; peach/pear  
2 beans; banana  
3 mushroom; melon  
4 carrot/cauliflower/cabbage; cherry  
5 aubergine; apple  

58.2 1 lettuce/chicken /l/  
onion/mushroom /ʌ/  
orange/cauliflower /o/  
banana/melon /æ/  
aubergine/tomato /əu/  
salmon/lamb /æ/  

58.3 1 salmon; the others are types of meat but salmon is a fish  
2 salmon; the others are types of shellfish but salmon is a fish  
3 aubergine; the others are found in salad but aubergine isn't  
4 peach; the others are vegetables but a peach is a fruit  
5 mussels; the others are types of meat but mussels is a shellfish  

58.4 Most likely answers:  
always  usually  never  
cherries  apples  bananas  
grapes  peaches  pineapples  
strawberries  pears  melons  
lemons  oranges  mangoes
Unit 59

59.2 1 chicken liver pate
2 tagliatelle with courgettes, cream and bacon
3 fillet steak
4 baked salmon
5 steak with a pepper sauce
6 breast of chicken in a white wine sauce
7 fillet steak
8 ice cream and chocolate mousse
9 fruit salad
10 probably the soup, salmon, and fruit salad

59.3 Possible answers
lemon – bitter  chicken – bland or tender  honey – sweet  bacon – salty or fatty or tasty
ice cream – sweet  fillet steak – tender or fatty or lean  chillies – hot and spicy
avocado – bland

Unit 60

60.1 Towns V Villages
noisy quiet and peaceful
dirty and polluted clean air
exciting boring
stressful relaxing
crowded lots of open space
lots to do nothing to do in the evening
dangerous safe

60.2 Possible answers
Town Country Town and country
factories fields gates
shopping centres woods car parks
pollution tractors footpaths
night-life villages libraries
Town Hall, suburbs valleys traffic

60.3 1 gate 3 path 5 valley 7 valley
2 tractor 4 field 6 wood 8 village

Unit 61

61.1 Go along this road and take the first turning at the junction. Then you keep going and turn right when you get to the school. Then turn right again into Maldon Road, and the bank is on the left-hand side just after the cinema.

61.2 1 fasten your seat belt; get in / start 4 braked; crashed 7 traffic jam
2 injured; damaged 5 pavement 8 lane; overtook
3 rush hour 6 broke down

61.3 1 park 4 one lane 7 lights
2 speed limit 5 motorway 8 bridge
3 turn right 6 park 9 roadworks
Unit 62

62.1  
1 ride  3 fares  5 fly  7 take  
2 get in  4 run  6 timetable  8 missed

62.2 Possible answers  
1 bus fare; train fare; air fare; taxi fare  
2 get on the bus; get on the coach; get on the train; get on the plane  
3 bus station; railway station; coach station  
4 bus driver; train driver; taxi driver; van driver  
5 get in the car; get in the taxi; get in the van. (People also sometimes say ‘get in the bus’ or ‘get in the train’.)  
6 train journey; bus journey; taxi journey; coach journey

62.3  
1 coach  2 van  3 lorry  4 motorbike  5 bike

62.4  
1 platform  3 full up  5 punctual  7 journey  
2 bus stop  4 arrival  6 queue  8 due

Unit 63

63.1  
1 earn £500  3 pay income tax  5 deal with clients  
2 work overtime  4 go to meetings  6 run a shop

63.2  
1 What’s your job?  
2 My salary is $50,000.  
3 My total income is £30,000.  
4 I work for a pharmaceutical company.  
5 My job involves looking after and maintaining all the hardware.  
6 I’m in charge of one of the smaller departments.

63.3 A: What are your working hours?  
A: Do you do/work any overtime?  
A: How much holiday / how many weeks holiday do you get?  
A: Teachers don’t earn very much, do they?

Unit 64

64.1 Possible answers  
1 a lawyer or doctor  5 a policeman  9 a doctor, nurse, surgeon, or vet  
2 a pilot  6 a vet  10 a soldier, sailor, or someone in the air force  
3 a sailor  7 a fireman  
4 a mechanic  8 an accountant

64.2 Possible answers  
1 an architect designs buildings  6 plans the construction of roads and bridges  
2 lectures in a university  7 builds walls  
3 controls the financial affairs of a company  8 buys and sells shares  
4 treats animals  9 repairs cars  
5 advises people on legal problems  10 operates on people

64.3  
1 Really. When did he join the army?  
2 Really. When did he join the navy?  
3 Really. When did he join the air force?  
4 Really. When did he join the fire brigade?
Possible answers
an architect to design your house
a lawyer to give you legal advice
a carpenter to make cupboards and fit doors
a plumber to fit the kitchen and bathroom
an electrician to do all the electrical work
an accountant to calculate how much everything will cost

Unit 65

1. sacked/dismissed 3. resigned 5. prospects 7. employees
2. unemployed 4. promoted 6. retired

Unit 66

Possible answers
1. write: a letter, a report, a memo, a cheque
2. send: a letter, a report, a fax, an invoice
3. make: phone calls, products, the tea, mistakes
4. arrange: meetings, conferences, visits, training courses

Unit 67

1. loan 3. inflation 5. it breaks even
2. interest 4. aims/goals/objectives 6. recession

1. gradual 3. thriving 5. aims
2. sharp 4. expanding 6. gone up

1. rose 3. sharp fall 5. rose sharply
2. fell slightly 4. steady rise 6. rose
67.4 1 public expenditure 3 tax cuts 5 raw material(s)
2 political/economic stability 4 interest/inflation rate* 6 profit and loss
*(Rate of inflation is also commonly used.)

Unit 68

68.1 product, price, promotion, place

68.2 sales manager; sales figures; sales forecast; market share; market leader; market research;
marketing manager; marketing department.
1 forecast 3 figures 5 research
2 manager; department 4 leader; share

68.3 1 representative 3 products 5 consumers
2 products 4 competitors 6 customers/clients

68.4 Noun Adjective Noun Adjective
excitement exciting prestige prestigious
glamour glamorous luxury luxurious
competition competitive reliability reliable
fashion fashionable danger dangerous

Unit 69

69.1 Possible answers
1 cards, musical instruments, board games
2 stamps, coins, antiques
3 hiking, rock climbing, jogging, hunting, camping

69.2 1 photography 4 jogging 7 DIY
2 collecting antiques 5 makes her own clothes
3 playing a musical instrument 6 chess

69.3 1 go 3 made 5 do 7 joined
2 took up; gave it up 4 collects 6 play 8 do

Unit 70

70.1 head it; pass it; catch it; drop it; throw it; hit it; kick it

70.2 Possible answers
1 tennis, table tennis, squash, badminton (shuttlecock), cricket, baseball, hockey
2 football, rugby, American football, hockey, basketball
3 rugby, American football, cricket, baseball, basketball
4 football, rugby
5 football

70.3 Sport Place Equipment
swimming pool trunks (men); costume (women)
football pitch boots, shorts; goals; net (for the goal); whistle (referee)
motor racing track crash helmet
golf course clubs
boxing ring shorts, boots, gloves, vest
tennis court racket, shorts, net, training shoes
70.4  1 false (they are the crowd/spectators)  5 true
      2 true
      3 true
      4 true

5 true (it is played on a court)
7 true
8 false (they wear a swimming costume)

71.1 Infinitive  Past tense  Past participle
win    won        won
lose   lost       lost
beat   beat       beaten
lead   led        led
catch  caught     caught
draw   drew       drawn

71.2  1 nil-nil    two-one   four all    2 fifteen love  forty thirty  deuce

71.3  1 beat  5 lost  9 set  13 match
      2 penalty  6 won  10 lost  14 score
      3 score  7 lost  11 set
      4 extra time  8 won  12 tie-break

71.4  1 true
      2 false (it has a referee)
      3 false (it is only decided on a tie-break if the score reaches 6–6)
      4 true
      5 true
      6 false (it is still in progress)
      7 true
      8 false (if you lose you are out of the competition)

71.5  1 rugby  3 tennis  5 motor racing  7 swimming
      2 football  4 basketball  6 football  8 athletics

72.1  1 stalls  2 C  3 yes  4 no

72.2  1 musical  3 the audience  5 director  7 reviews  9 to book
      2 the cast  4 clap  6 critics  8 subtitles  10 stars

72.3  1 Dirty Harry could be described as an action film or a thriller.
      2 Blade Runner is a science fiction film.
      3 Four Weddings and a Funeral is a comedy.
      4 Schindler’s List could be described as a war film or a thriller.
      5 Dances with Wolves is a western.

73.1  1 Tolstoy – novelist  7 Verdi – composer
      2 Wordsworth – poet  8 Mick Jagger – singer and songwriter
      3 Ibsen – dramatist  9 Nascimento – singer-songwriter
      4 Mishima – novelist  10 Paul Tortelier – cellist
      5 Chekhov – dramatist  11 Paul Simon – singer and songwriter
      6 Mozart – composer  12 Mark Knopfler – singer, songwriter, guitarist

234  English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
13 Henry Moore – sculptor 16 Saki – short story writer
14 Borges – novelist and short story writer 17 Bernstein – composer and conductor
15 Picasso – painter 18 Giacometti – sculptor

73.2 pianist; guitarist; drummer; violinist; cellist; flautist

73.3 1 a landscape  2 a portrait  3 an abstract

73.4 1 orchestra  5 write; performs/plays
2 group/band; solo artist  6 opera
3 classical; composer  7 novel
4 exhibition; gallery  8 play

Unit 74

74.2 Minister to leave his job / resign
Government reduces spending ...
New attempt/try to reduce ...
Bad weather has a terrible effect on farmers
Germany supports ...
Minister in argument about tax
Police discover important witness
Japan and US enter fresh discussions

Unit 75

75.1 1 Could you turn it up, please?
2 Could you turn/switch over?
3 Could you turn it down?
4 Could you turn/switch it off?

75.2 Documentary: Cutting Edge and World in Action
Game show: Bruce’s Price is Right (The Krypton Factor is also a game show)
Quiz show: Telly Addicts
Drama series: Cracker
Current affairs: World in Action
The soap operas are: Coronation Street and EastEnders.
The comedy series is Two Point Four Children.

Unit 76

76.1 Possible answers
phone number; phone card; phone box; telephone directory; answerphone; on the phone

76.2 A 1 My name is  2 message  3 out / not here
4 ring you / call you back  5 number
B 6 Is that  7 afraid  8 be back  9 leave (a) message
10 phone me / ring me / ring me back
C 11 Is that  12 it’s  13 rang  14 get through  15 engaged  16 on
Unit 77

**Possible answers**

1. software  
2. a word processor  
3. floppy disk  
4. user-friendly  
5. computer-literate  
6. keyboard  
7. a computer program/programmer/game  
8. CD-ROM  
9. laser printer  
10. laptop  
11. spreadsheet  
12. e-mail

**77.2**

1. cut  
2. print  
3. save the data in this document  
4. open a new document  
5. open an existing document  
6. copy  
7. paste

**77.3**

1. computer  
2. printed  
3. down  
4. back-up  
5. cut  
6. graphics  
7. save  
8. graphics  
9. back-up

Unit 78

**78.1**

1. Maths  
2. History  
3. Science  
4. English  
5. Technology  
6. Geography  
7. Art  
8. Music  
9. French  
10. Economics

**78.2**

1. They leave  
2. French and German  
3. comprehensive  
4. 16  
5. Go to university or get a job  
6. to school  
7. to bed  
8. to church  
9. into hospital  
10. to university

Unit 79

**79.1**

1. medicine  
2. architecture  
3. agriculture  
4. psychology  
5. business studies  
6. history of art  
7. politics  
8. law

**79.2**

1. a grant  
2. degree  
3. undergraduates  
4. lecturers  
5. graduates  
6. postgraduates  
7. research  
8. lecture

**79.3**

1. doing  
2. get  
3. get  
4. doing  
5. doing  
6. go to  
7. make  
8. doing/conducting  
9. last

Unit 80

**80.1**

3, 9, 7, 8, 2, 6, 4, 1, 5

**80.2**

1. the police  
2. the judge  
3. prisoners  
4. the jury  
5. barristers (lawyers)  
6. criminals

**80.3**

1. broken; committed  
2. against  
3. fine  
4. prove  
5. guilty  
6. evidence  
7. convicted; sentence  
8. offence

**80.4**

1. Yes  
2. Visit the people who were broken into and take fingerprints if possible.  
3. Probably not  
4. burglary  
5. No, not at 15.  
6. Probably a suspended sentence (= the boys are free but if they commit another crime in the next year or two years, they will receive a much tougher punishment) unless the boys already have a record for burglary. In this case, they could be sent to a centre for young offenders.
Unit 81

81.1 Crimes People Places
murder thief prison
robbery barrister cell
rape burglar court
manslaughter judge police station
shoplifting criminal

81.2 1 burglary 3 charged with shoplifting 5 charged with theft
2 with murder 4 with manslaughter

81.4 1 carry 3 punishment 5 defence
2 allowed/able 4 spray 6 reduce/cut

Unit 82

82.1 Abstract noun Person Adjective
politics politician political
democracy democrat democratic
dictatorship dictator dictatorial
socialism socialist socialist
conservatism conservative conservative
liberalism liberal liberal

82.2 1 elections 4 parliament 7 majority
2 Prime 5 system 8 form
3 votes 6 party 9 power

Possible reasons to justify this system are:

One single party has power, so there is little compromise which produces a strong government; there is a single set of policies; the government has a majority and so is relatively stable and does not need to call elections often.

Unit 83

83.1 1 identity/landing card 3 driving/TV licence
2 birth/marriage/exam certificate 4 application/enrolment/registration form

83.2 1 get/obtain 4 sign 7 enrolment/registration
2 checked 5 runs out / expires; renew
3 fill in 6 queues

83.4 1 when were you born? 4 When did you arrive?
2 Where do you come from? 5 When are you leaving?
3 Are you single or married?

83.5 Problems mentioned were:
1 long queues
2 waiting in one queue, then you discover you should be in another queue
3 delays e.g. in getting a new passport
4 officials putting the wrong information on documents, which then need to be changed, e.g. driving licence
5 officials losing information you have given them
6 being asked to explain the same information over and over again to different officials, especially over the telephone
7 spending a long time getting a document in one country, then you discover that nobody is interested in it when you arrive in another country
8 officials who act like policemen

**Unit 84**

84.1
1 ally = friendly country
2 release = permit to go free
3 conflict = strong disagreement
4 troops = large group of soldiers
5 invade = enter another country by force and in large numbers
6 wound = injure from fighting
7 territory = land controlled by a country
8 ceasefire = stop fighting

84.2
1 carry on fighting / continue to fight  4 mostly civilians
2 they will retreat  5 release them
3 run out of food

84.3  First mention  repeated as ...
ordinary people  civilians
soldiers  troops
shelling  firing
hit  wounded
allow them to enter  let anyone in
captured  take control of
soldiers  army

84.4  Possible answers
1 Terrorists use hostages for bargaining, e.g. they release hostages if governments give them money or release political prisoners. Hostages also give the terrorists protection.
2 Some governments refuse on moral grounds, i.e. they believe it is wrong to bargain with hostages. Some governments believe that if you agree to terrorists demands on one occasion, terrorists will attack again.

**Unit 85**

85.1
1 the ozone layer  5 industrial or human waste
2 global warming  6 tropical rainforests
3 acid rain  7 a bottle bank
4 exhaust fumes  8 natural or human resources

85.2
Noun  Verb  Noun  Adjective
waste  waste  damage  damaging
protection  protect  environment  environmental
destruction  destroy  harm  harmful (≠ harmless)
pollution  pollute  danger  dangerous
damage  damage  safety  safe

85.3
1 plants and animals  4 carbon dioxide
2 smoke from factories  5 destroys the ozone layer
3 the earth
We should: recycle paper etc.; save/keep/protect tropical rainforests; plant more trees; save water and energy.

We shouldn’t: throw away paper etc.; destroy the ozone layer; waste water and energy; cut down tropical rainforests.

85.5 1 false 2 true 3 true 4 true 5 true

Unit 86

86.1 1 boarding card 6 duty free
2 baggage reclaim 7 overhead locker
3 excess baggage 8 take-off
4 passport control 9 departure lounge
5 hand luggage 10 check-in

86.2 1 check-in 5 hand luggage 9 terminal building
2 boarding card 6 overhead locker 10 baggage reclaim
3 excess baggage 7 runway
4 departure lounge 8 stewards (or cabin crew)

86.3 1 took off 3 fasten 5 landed 7 flight
2 captain/pilot 4 flew 6 get off

Unit 87

87.1 7, 9, 2, 4, 12, 8, 5, 6, 10, 11, 1, 3

87.2 Possible answers
1 I’d like to book a double room for two nights for next Thursday and Friday, please? or Do you have a double room free for next Friday and Saturday?
2 Could I have my bill, please? or Could you order a taxi for me, please?
3 Could I have a call tomorrow morning at 7 a.m., please?
4 Could you put it on my bill, please?
5 I’m afraid there’s something wrong with the shower in my room. or I’m afraid the shower in my room isn’t working very well.
6 How do I get to the nearest bank from here? or Could you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please?

Unit 88

88.1 1 great/lovely time 4 a look 7 lost 10 spent
2 sightseeing 5 souvenirs 8 market 11 taken
3 packed 6 galleries 9 go out

88.3 Possible answers
1 Yes, it’s a great place.
2 Yes, it’s very cosmopolitan.
3 Yes, it was absolutely packed.
4 Yes, the night-life is fantastic.
5 Yes, we had a great time.
Unit 89

89.1 Possible answers
sunshine; suntan; suntan lotion; sun cream; sunburn; sunglasses; sunbed; sunbathe; sunlight; sunblock; sunset; sunrise; sunshade; sunstroke

89.2 1 sandy beach  3 beach umbrella  5 sunbathe  7 big waves  
2 suntan lotion  4 rough sea  6 seaside  8 steep cliff

1 to spend time on the beach
2 because they want a suntan
3 to protect yourself from the sun
4 to protect themselves and also help to get a suntan
5 very painful
6 surfing

89.3 1 get away  3 quiet  5 walk/stroll
2 country/countryside  4 lie/sunbathe  6 picnic

89.4 1 resort  3 lying/sunbathing  5 picnic
2 different/various  4 rent  6 quiet

Unit 90

90.1 1 at  3 at  5 on  7 on  9 on  11 in
2 in  4 in  6 at  8 at  10 at  12 on

90.2 1 hy  3 since  5 during  7 in  9 throughout
2 until  4 for  6 for  8 during  10 for

90.3 1 two  3 1963  5 ten
2 17th  4 12 hours 30 minutes  6 1960s

90.4 1 a few days ago  4 for ages
2 for the time being  5 a long time ago
3 recently/lately

Unit 91

91.1 1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 two and a half
3 two thousand three hundred and forty-five
4 six point seven five
5 nought point two five
6 three and a third
7 one million two hundred and fifty thousand
8 ten point oh four
9 forty-seven per cent
10 the tenth of September or September the tenth
11 the third of July or July the third
12 six oh two eight four seven seven or double seven
13 five degrees below zero or minus five degrees centigrade
14 nineteen oh three or nineteen hundred and three
15 eighteen seventy six

240 English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
91.2 1 thousand 2 the tenth of September 3 two hundred and twenty 4 twenty-five out of forty 5 the thirty-first of August 6 seven two three six oh nine

91.3 1 59 2 192 3 60 4 5 5 8 6 15

Unit 92

92.2 Possible questions
How tall is she?
What size shoes does she take?
How high is the mountain? / What’s the height of the mountain?
How far is it from one side of the lake to the other?
How big is the lake? / What’s the size of the lake?
How deep is it? / What’s the depth of the lake?
How long is the pitch? / What’s the length of the pitch?
How wide is the pitch? / What’s the width of the pitch?

92.3 1 No, he’s quite thin. 2 No, it’s very shallow. 3 No, it’s a tall building, actually. 4 No, it’s quite narrow. 5 No, it’s a great place. 6 No, he’s fairly short. 7 No, it’s a great big place.

Unit 93

93.1 1 a rectangular table 2 a star-shaped ring 3 a round window 4 a check shirt 5 a tartan tie 6 an oval-shaped plate 7 diamond-shaped earrings 8 a striped sofa 9 a pointed nose 10 light grey jeans

93.2 1 pencil/pen 2 salmon 3 football/rugby/hockey pitch or tennis court 4 carrot 5 moon 6 the sea 7 an egg 8 a ‘warning’ triangle 9 a coat hanger 10 a square

Unit 94

94.1 1 bottle 2 jug 3 bowl 4 box 5 packet 6 bag 7 tin 8 jar

94.2 Probable answers
The most surprising and unlikely are: a vase of coffee; a tube of cigarettes; a carton of toothpaste. It may also be quite unusual to have a ‘glass of soup’.

94.3 1 bunch (also ‘bouquet’) 2 gang 3 slices (also pieces and bits) 4 piece (also bit) 5 bit 6 sheet (also piece and bit) 7 group 8 team 9 piece (also bit) 10 drop (also bit) 11 pair 12 bit
Wrong answers
1 none
2 sheet
3 gang (gang would be appropriate if you have a negative view of journalists)
4 group
5 none
6 piece

Unit 95
95.1 1 ripe 4 water 7 photo 10 washing powder
2 new 5 sore 8 donkey 11 doorbell
3 horrible 6 fresh 9 cod 12 silk

Possible answers
1 looks sad.
2 looks/feels soft.
3 tastes horrible.

95.3 1 listening to; heard
2 heard
3 hear
4 look at
5 watch
6 listening
7 touch
8 press
9 hold
10 watch (‘look’ is also possible here but less likely); see

Unit 96
96.1 Possible answers
Please queue other side
Beware of pickpockets
Mind the step
Mind your head
Sold-out
Please do not disturb; Please do not feed the animals
Out of order
No exit; No smoking; No parking
Keep right; Keep off the grass

96.2 Possible answers
1 In a Bed & Breakfast (cheap hotel) 5 Public telephone
2 On the underground 6 Theatre or cinema
3 Customs at an airport or port 7 On the outside of a parcel/package
4 Bank or post office 8 In a park

96.3 1 Please do not feed the animals 5 Do not lean out of the window
2 Do not leave bags unattended 6 No smoking
3 Please do not disturb 7 Keep right; No smoking; No exit
4 No parking 8 Mind your head
Unit 97

97.1 Possible answers
1 a type of perfume or after shave
2 the key
3 whisky
4 knife and fork
5 flour
6 programme
7 clothes or belongings
8 a type of toy
9 a suitcase
10 shampoo or conditioner

97.2 Possible additions
A: How many people were at the conference?
B: Roughly 400.
A: Did you enjoy it?
B: Yes, sort of.
A: You don’t seem very sure.
B: Well, there were some good things, but it was a bit too long.
A: And did you go to John’s talk?
B: Naturally.
A: How did it go?
B: Well he was sort of nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.
A: Did he have a big audience?
B: About 75.
A: That’s good, isn’t it?
B: I think John was a bit disappointed – he wanted at least a hundred.

97.3 Possible answers
1 more or less
2 a bit
3 sort of
4 more or less/roughly
5 sort of
6 a bit / sort of

Unit 98

98.1
1 American (because of vacation): fall
2 American (because of high school): semester
3 British (because of biscuits): sweets
4 American (because of garbage): trashcan
5 British (because of trousers): waistcoat
6 American (because of truck): highway
7 Probably American (because of apartment): elevator
8 British (because of fortnight): holiday
9 American (because of subway with this meaning): parking lot
10 British (because of trainers): wardrobe

98.2
British
American
holiday
vacation
trousers
pants
flat
apartment
trainers
sneakers
secondary school
high school
biscuits
cookies
rubbish
garbage
main road
highway
fortnight
two weeks / fourteen days
underground (tube)
subway
98.3  1 gas/petrol  5 cab/taxi
2 freeway/motorway  6 sidewalk/pavement
3 gas station / petrol station or garage  7 truck driver / lorry driver
4 parking lot / car park

98.4  1 queue  2 curtains  3 reverse charge call  4 barrister  5 bill

Unit 99

99.1  Formal  Informal
purchase  handy
resume   loo
thus     terrific
commence quid
apprehend reckon
guy

purchase/buy; handy/convenient; loo/toilet; resume / start again; thus/therefore; terrific/fantastic;
quid/pounds; commence/start; apprehend/catch; reckon/think; guy/man

99.2  1 When are you going to pick up your bike?
2 Most of the kids are very bright.
3 I reckon it'll start pretty soon.
4 Do you fancy going out for a meal?
5 My flat is five minutes from where I work, so it's very handy.
6 What's up?
7 The guy in the market wanted 20 quid for this ring.
8 Where did you buy/get that book?
9 They'll never catch him.
10 I'm just going to the loo.

99.3  We regret to inform you that we are unable to lend you the sum of £500 that you require, but it
may be possible to grant you a loan for part of the sum.

If you are still interested, would you like to contact our main office to arrange an appointment
with the assistant manager. He will be happy to discuss the matter further.

99.4  1 attend (fml) = go to  4 bloke (infml) = man
2 a drag (infml) = boring  5 permitted (fml) = allowed
3 pinched (infml) = stolen

Unit 100

100.1  1 British Broadcasting Corporation  5 Prime Minister
2 Member of Parliament  6 United Nations
3 European Union  7 United Kingdom
4 Value Added Tax  8 Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

100.2  Michael
Pete had a maths exam this afternoon and then he had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he'll
probably a bit late home. You can watch TV while you're waiting for him and please help yourself
to anything from the fridge. If there's a problem (e.g. Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination)
my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by
about 5 p.m.
Margaret (Peter's mum)
PTO stands for ‘please turn over’ at the bottom of a page.
RSVP means ‘please reply’ (from the French ‘respondez, s’il vous plaît’) and is found at the bottom of formal invitations e.g. to a reception or wedding. The French do not use this expression or abbreviation however.
c/o stands for ‘care of’. You put this on an envelope when the person you write to does not live at the address on the letter but can be reached there.
Asap stands for ‘as soon as possible’ and is commonly used in faxes; the letters are read individually a-s-a-p.
## Phonetic symbols

### Vowel sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/i/</td>
<td>sleep, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɪ/</td>
<td>happy, recipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/a/</td>
<td>pin, dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɒ/</td>
<td>foot, could, pull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/uː/</td>
<td>do, shoe, through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/</td>
<td>red, head, said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/æ/</td>
<td>arrive, father, colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>sort, thought, walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɛ/</td>
<td>cat, black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʌ/</td>
<td>sun, enough, wonder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>got, watch, sock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʌː/</td>
<td>part, heart, laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɛɪ/</td>
<td>name, late, aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/aɪ/</td>
<td>my, idea, time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔɪ/</td>
<td>boy, noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eɪ/</td>
<td>pair, where, bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɜː/</td>
<td>bear, beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔʊ/</td>
<td>go, home, show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/aʊ/</td>
<td>out, cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oʊ/</td>
<td>pure, fewer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Consonant sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>car, kick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɡ/</td>
<td>go, guarantee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>catch, church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/θ/</td>
<td>age, lounge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/f/</td>
<td>for, cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/v/</td>
<td>love, vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/θ/</td>
<td>thick, path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ð/</td>
<td>this, mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>since, rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>zoo, houses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>shop, sugar, machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʒ/</td>
<td>pleasure, usual, vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>hear, hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>name, now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ŋ/</td>
<td>bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>look, while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>wear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Pronunciation problems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>when ‘a’ is /æ/</th>
<th>when ‘u’ is /u/</th>
<th>when ‘i’ is /aɪ/</th>
<th>when ‘o’ or ‘oo’ is /ʌ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>patient</td>
<td>punctual</td>
<td>pilot</td>
<td>gloves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>virus</td>
<td>oven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>dial</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>hepatitis</td>
<td>front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>function</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>monkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase</td>
<td>publish</td>
<td>licence</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engaged</td>
<td>customs</td>
<td>diet</td>
<td>worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunbathe</td>
<td>luck</td>
<td>striped</td>
<td>flood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lately</td>
<td>bankrupt</td>
<td>tiny</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When ou is /uː/ e.g. row (= line), throw, blow, show, know, elbow
When ou or ow is /au/ e.g. lounge, drought, row (= argument), towel, allowed, blouse, shower
When ou is /uː/ e.g. soup, group, through, wound, souvenir, routine
When ou is /ʌ/ e.g. cousin, couple, trouble, tough, rough, enough
When a, au or aw is /ʌ/ e.g. draw, raw, law, stall, fall, cause, audience, launch, exhausted
When a or au is /aɪ/ e.g. vase, calm, laugh, draughty, half
When a or u is /aɪ/ e.g. busy, business, minute, lettuce, purchase, surface, orange, damage
When o is /uː/ e.g. move, prove, improve, lose
When or or ur is /aː/ e.g. purple, burn, burglary, worth, work, curtain
When ea is /e/ e.g. dreadful, jealous, health, dead, bread, instead, pleasant, weather, weapon

**Silent letters** (the underlined letters are silent):
- island, knee, knife, know, knock, knowledge, wrong, wrist, muscle, castle, whistle, fasten, listen, bomb, lamb, thumb, comb, scissors, psychology, honest, hour, cupboard, answer, guess, handsome, aisle, half, calm, christmas, mortgage

**Short syllables** (the underlined letters often disappear or are only a /ʌ/):
- fattening; miserable; comfortable; fashionable; restaurant; strawberry, eventually, parliament, actually occasionally, prisoner, medicine, favourite, temperature, literature

### Problem pairs:
- quite /kwæt/ and quiet /kwət/  desert /ˈdezət/ and dessert /ˈdɛzət/  soup /suːp/ and soap /ˈsoʊp/

**Note:** The pronunciation of these letters at the end of words is often like this:
- -ous /ˈɔːs/ e.g. famous, dangerous, unconscious, ambitious, cautious, jealous
- -age / ædʒ/ e.g. luggage, baggage, village, damage, cabbage, bandage, message, manage, garage
- -able / əˈbl/ e.g. comfortable, reliable, suitable, unbreakable, vegetable, fashionable, miserable
- -are /eə/ e.g. care, spare, square, beware, stare, fare, aware, rare(ly), barely
- -ile / əʊl/ e.g. fragile, mobile, file, while
- -tory /tərɪ/ e.g. directory, history, secretary, documentary
- -ture /tʃər/ e.g. picture, signature, departure, capture, temperature, literature, feature
- -ate /eɪt/ at the end of verbs e.g. educate, operate, communicate
- -ate /eɪt/ at the end of nouns and adjectives e.g. graduate, approximate, certificate
badminton 70 /ˌbædmɪntən/
bag 94 /beɪg/
baggage reclaim 86 /ˈbeɪgɪdʒ/
bake 59 /beɪk/
balcony 49 /ˈbælkəni/
banana 58 /ˈbænənə/
band 73 /bænd/
bandage 55 /ˈbændɪdʒ/ 
barely 32 /ˈbɛrəli/
barrister 80 /ˈbærɪsta/
baseball 70 /ˈbeɪsbol/ 
basket 94 /ˈbæskɪt/ 
basketball 70 /ˈbæskɪtlbɔːl/ 
bat 70 /bæt/ 
bathroom 50, 98 /ˈbɑːθrʊm/ 
batteries 52 /ˈbætəriz/ 
BBC 100 /ˈbɪbliːt/ 
be back 76
be down 67
be in power 82
be unable to 99
be up 67
be/get delayed / held up 23
beach /bɪtʃ/ ~ umbrella 89
bear 40 /beər/
beard 43 /breɪd/ 
beast 71 /bɪt/ 
beautiful 43 /ˈbjuːtɪfl/ 
because (of) 36 /biˈkəz/
bed & breakfast 87
bedroom 50 /ˈbɛdruːm/ 
bedside table 51 /ˈbedsaɪd/ 
bee 40 /bɪ/ 
beef 58 /bɪf/ 
before (+-ing) 33 /bɪˈfoː/ 
behind 31 /bɪˈhend/ 
beige 93 /ˈbɛɪʒ/ 
belongs to 14, 49 /bɪˈlɒŋz/ 
tuː/ 
below 31 /bɪˈləʊ/ 
belt 56 /bɛlt/ 
bend (n, v) 42, 61 /bend/ 
besides 33 /bɪˈsайдz/ 
best friend 46 
between 31 /bɪˈtwɪn/ 
beware of 96 /brˈweə əv/ 
bicycle 62 /ˈbaɪsɪkl/ 
bid 74 /bɪd/ 
bike 100 /bɜk/ 
bill 59, 87 /bɪl/ 
billion 91 /ˈbɪljən/ 
birth certificate 83
    /bɜːtʃ ˈsɜːtɪfɪk@t/ 
bit 94 /bɪt/ 
bite your nails 42 /bɪt/ 
bitter 59 /ˈbɪtr/ 
blame (sb, for) 29 /ˈblem/ 
blond 59 /ˈblɒnd/ 
bleed 55 /blɪd/ 
bless you 26 /ˈbles juː/ 
block of flats 49 /blaʊk/ 
blonde 49 /ˈblɒnd/ 
blond(e) 43 /ˈblɒnd/ 
brother 55 /bɑːðər/ 
brother-in-law 11, 46 
bruise (n, v) 55 /bɹəʊz/ 
brush one’s teeth 48, 51
BSc 79 /ˈbɪs:si/ as st/ 
build 43 /bɪld/ 
bullet/knife wound 55
bunch (of flowers) 94 /ˈbʌntʃ/ 
bureaucracy 83
    /ˈbjuərɔkrəsi/ 
bureaucrat 83
    /ˈbjuərəkræt/ 
burglar 81 /ˈbɜːɡlər/ ~ alarm 81
burglary 81 /ˈbɜːɡləri/ 
burgle 81 /ˈbɜːɡl/ 
burn 52 /bɜrn/ 
bus station/stop 62
business studies 79
butcher 57 /ˈbʌtʃər/ 
butterfly 40 /ˈbʌtəfl/ 
button 56 /ˈbʌtən/ 
by (e.g. Dickens, Spielberg, etc.) 15
by accident 15
by car/train/bus/plane 15
by chance 15
by hand 15
by mistake 15
by myself, 15, 48 /ˈbeɪ/ 
by 90

cab (US) 98 /ˈkæb/ 
cabbage 58 /ˈkæbɪdʒ/
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>division</td>
<td>/ˈdɪvɪʒn/</td>
<td>Do you think you could ...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t</td>
<td>/dən’t/</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do (a bit of / lots of)</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>hiking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(the) housework</td>
<td>/haʊsˌwɜːk/</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do a course</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>19, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do a subject</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do homework</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>3, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do overtime</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do research</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>(in/into) 19, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do something/nothing</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the ironing</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the shopping</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>19, 48, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the washing</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the washing-up</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do well</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do-it-yourself (DIY)</td>
<td>/dəʊ/</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document</td>
<td>/dəkˈmənt/</td>
<td>77, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentary</td>
<td>/dəkˈmənərəri/</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t worry</td>
<td>/dən’t/</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doorbell</td>
<td>/dɔːˈbel/</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double room</td>
<td>/ˈdʌb(ə)l rʊm/</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down (the computer’s down)</td>
<td>/daʊn/</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>/daʊn/</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down in the dumps</td>
<td>/daʊn/</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downmarket</td>
<td>/daʊnˈmɑːrkɪt/</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr 100</td>
<td>/dr/</td>
<td>/ˈdəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drag</td>
<td>/dræɡ/</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drama series</td>
<td>/ˈdrɑːmə/</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dramatic</td>
<td>/ˈdrɑːmætɪk/</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dramatist</td>
<td>/ˈdrɑːmətɪst/</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drapes (US)</td>
<td>/dræps/</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draughty</td>
<td>/draʊˈti/</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw (n, v)</td>
<td>/drɔː/</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawers</td>
<td>/ˈdrɔːz/</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawing</td>
<td>/ˈdrɔːɪŋ/</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dreadful</td>
<td>/ˈdrɛdfl/</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream (n, v)</td>
<td>/drɪm/</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drinkable</td>
<td>/ˈdrɪŋkəbəl/</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driving licence</td>
<td>/ˈdraɪvɪŋ/</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laisons</td>
<td>/ˈlɑːsənz/</td>
<td>drop (n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v)</td>
<td>/drɒpt/</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drought</td>
<td>/draʊθ/</td>
<td>37, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drummer</td>
<td>/ˈdrʌmə/</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry weather</td>
<td>/ˈdrɛɪ/</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dubbed</td>
<td>/dʌbd/</td>
<td>due to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dumping</td>
<td>/ˈdæmpɪŋ/</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during</td>
<td>/ˈdʒuərɪŋ/</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>/dʌtʃ/</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty-free</td>
<td>/ˈdɛtɪfri/</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duvet</td>
<td>/ˈdjuːvet/</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-mail</td>
<td>/ˈiːmæl/</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>/iːg/</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>/ˈiːgəl/</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earache</td>
<td>/ˈɪərək/</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early morning</td>
<td>/ˈɜərəmɪŋ/</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>/kɔːl/</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earn</td>
<td>/ɜːn/</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earnings</td>
<td>/ˈiːnərɪŋz/</td>
<td>11, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earth</td>
<td>/ɜːθ/</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earthquake</td>
<td>/ˈɜːθkwɛrk/</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy-going</td>
<td>/ˈɪziː ˈgoʊɪŋ/</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economic</td>
<td>/iːˈkɒnəmɪk/</td>
<td>policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economic stability</td>
<td>/iːˈkɒnəmɪk ɪˈstæbəlɪti/</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economical</td>
<td>/iːˈkɒnəmɪkəl/</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economics</td>
<td>/iːˈkɒnəmɪks/</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economist</td>
<td>/iːˈkɒnəmɪst/</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editor</td>
<td>/ˈɛdɪtə/</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>education</td>
<td>/iˈdʒuːˈeɪʃən/</td>
<td>5, 78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effective</td>
<td>/iˈfɛktɪv/</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>/ˈɛgɪpt/</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptian</td>
<td>/ˈɛgɪpjən/</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elbow</td>
<td>/ˈɛlbəʊ/</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elderly</td>
<td>/ˈɛldərɪ/</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elect</td>
<td>/ˈɛlekt/</td>
<td>8, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>election</td>
<td>/ˈɛlkʃən/</td>
<td>8, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrical appliances</td>
<td>/ˈɛlektrɪkal əˈplɛnəsɪz/</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrician</td>
<td>/ˈɛlktrɪkʃən/</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>/ˈɛlfənt/</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator (US)</td>
<td>/ˈelɪvətə/</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassed</td>
<td>/ɪˈmərəbəst/</td>
<td>30, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassment</td>
<td>/ɪˈmərəbəsənt/</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emergency services</td>
<td>/ɪˈmərədʒənsi/</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emotional</td>
<td>/ɪˈməʊʃənl/</td>
<td>employer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employment</td>
<td>/ɪmˈplɔɪt/</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engaged</td>
<td>/ɪnˈɡeɪnd/</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineer</td>
<td>/ˈendʒɪnər/</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>/ˈendʒɪnɪərɪŋ/</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>/ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoyable</td>
<td>/ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbəl/</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enormous</td>
<td>/ɪnˈnɔrməs/</td>
<td>30, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>/ɪnˈʌf/</td>
<td>5, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrol</td>
<td>/ɪnˈrɔːl/</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrolment</td>
<td>/ɪnˈrɔːlmənt/</td>
<td>form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evidence</td>
<td>/ˈevɪdəns/</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex</td>
<td>/ɛks/</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exam</td>
<td>/ɛkˈzem/</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>/ɪkˈzempʊn/</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>except (for)</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsept/</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excess baggage</td>
<td>/ɪkˈses ˈbægdʒ/</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsaɪtɪd/</td>
<td>30, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excuse</td>
<td>/ɪkˈskjuːs/</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excuse me</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsjuːs mi/</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhaust</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspleɪn/</td>
<td>furnace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhausted</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspleɪnt/</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhausting</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspleɪnt/</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhibition</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstriːʃn/</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expand</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstænd/</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expecting (a baby)</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspekɪŋ/</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect (think)</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspekt/</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expenditure</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspendɪtʃə/</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspensɪv/</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expire</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspɪr/</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsplɛn/</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstɛnt/</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extra time</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstrɑːt/</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extract</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstrækt/</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extreme</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstrɪm/</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
extremely 32 /ɪkˈstrɪmpli/
eyebrows 42 /ˈaɪbrouz/
factory 60, 85 /ˈfæktəri/
fair 43 /feər/
fee 32 /fiːɪlɪ/
fell (n, v) 67 /fæl/ffall asleep 48 /fɔːl/
fall in love 47 /fɔːl/
fall over 16 /fɔːl/
fall slowly/sharply 2 /fɔːl/
fall (n) (US) 98 /fɔːl/
falls 37 /fɔːlz/
family name 46
famous 9 /feɪməs/
fancy 99 /ˈfeɪnsi/
far 92 /fɑːr/
fare 62 /fər/
farewell 26 /ˈfeərwel/
father 8 /fɑːtər/
farming 39 /ˈfeɪmɪŋ/
fascinated/fascinating 30
/ˈfeɪsnɛttəd/ /ˈfeɪsnɛttɪŋ/
fascism 82 /ˈfæsɪzəm/
fascist 82 /ˈfæsɪst/
fashion 68 /ˈfæʃən/
fashionable 68 /ˈfæʃənəbəl/
fasten 5 /ˈfʌːsən/
fasten your seat belt 61, 86
fat 43, 92 /fæt/
father-in-law 11, 46
fattening 5, 59 /ˈfeɪtəmɪŋ/
fruity 59 /ˈfætiː/ffaucet (US) 98 /ˈfɔːstət/
favourite 75 /ˈfeɪvərɪt/
fear 45 /fɪər/
features 74 /ˈfɪʃəz/
feel (n, v) 95 /fɪl/ffeel like ... 18, 28
feel sick 54
feels + adj; feels like + noun 95
fence 49 /fens/
field 60 /fiːld/
fifteen-minute (drive) 12
fifty-pence piece 53
fight crime 81 /fæt/
file (for papers) (n, v) 6
/ˈfaɪl/
files 66 /ˈfaɪəlz/
filing cabinet 66 /ˈfeɪlnɪŋ/ffoffee
fill in (a form) 83
film star 11 /ˈfɪlm stɑːr/ffinal score 71 /ˈfeɪnəl skɔːr/ffinally 33 /ˈfeɪnəlɪ/
finance (v) 67 /ˈfeɪməns/
find out 16
fine (n) 80 /fain/
finger 2, 42 /ˈfɪŋɡər/ffinish 28 /ˈfɪnɪʃ/
fire (v) 84 /faɪə/ffire brigade 64 /ˈfeɪbrɪɡid/ffirefighter 64 /ˈfeɪəfɪtər/ffirst aid 11
first class 12
first name 46
first of all 33
first(ly) 33 /ˈfɪrstli/ffishermen 39 /ˈfɪʃəmən/
fishing 39 /ˈfɪʃɪŋ/ffishing boat 39
fit 56, 64, 66 /fɪt/
fitting room 57 /ˈfɪtɪŋ rʊm/ffive-pound (note) 12
fix up 99 /fɪks/fflats 49 /flæts/
flexi-time 63 /ˈfleksɪtɜːm/fflexible 44 /ˈfleksɪbəl/fflight 62, 86 /flaɪt/
flood 37 /flɔːd/ffloor 49 /flɔːr/ffloppy disk 77 /ˈflɔːpi dɪsk/
floral 93 /ˈflɔːrəl/
flu (influenza) 54, 100 /fljuː/ffly 40, 62 /flaɪ/ffog 38 /fɒɡ/ffoggy 38 /ˈfɒɡi/
fold your arms 42
food mixer 50
foot 42 /fʊt/ffootball 70 /ˈfʊtbɔːl/ffootpath 60 /ˈfʊtpæθ/ffor 90 /fɔːr/
for a start 18
for a walk/swim/drive/run 15
for ages 90
for another thing 33
for example 100
for good 18
for one thing 33
for the time being 90
force (sb. to do sth.) 28 /fɔːs/
forehead 42 /ˈfɔːrid/
foreign news 74 /ˈfɔːrn/fforeign policy 82
forest 37 /ˈfɔːrst/fforget 28 /fɔːˈɡet/fform (a government) 82
/ˈfɔːm/
fortnight 90 /ˈfɔːtnaɪt/ffortunately 48 /ˈfɔːtʃʌrətli/
fountain 88 /ˈfeɪntən/
fracture 91 /ˈfræktʃən/ffragile 96 /ˈfrelədʒi/ffrance 41 /ˈfrɑːns/
freelance 74 /ˈfriːlɑːns/ffreeway (US) 98 /ˈfriːweɪ/ffreezing 30, 38 /ˈfrɪziŋ/ffrench 41, 78 /ˈfrentʃ/ffrench fries (US) 98
frequently 32 /ˈfrentɪkwəntli/
fresh 59 /frefs/ffridge (refrigerator) 50, 100 /ˈfrɪdʒ/ffriendly 44 /ˈfrendli/ffrightened/frightening 30
/ˈfræntənd/ /ˈfræntənɪŋ/ffront door 49
front garden 49
fruit 58 /fruːt/ffry 59 /fri/ffrying pan 50
full (of) 14 /fʊl/ffull board 87
full name 46
full stop 4
full up 62
full-time 12
fully aware 13
fully-booked 87
furniture 27 /ˈfɜːnɪtʃər/ffurther 99 /ˈfɜːðər/
furthermore 34 /ˈfɜːðərˈmɔːr/
gain (weight) 3 /ˈgeim/fgale 38 /ˈgeil/fgame 71 /ˈgeim/fgang 94 /ˈɡæŋ/
garage 49 /ˈgærɪdʒ/
garbage (US) 98 /gar'baдж/
gas(oline) (US) 98 /'gasoli:n/
gate 49, 60 /'get/
generous 44 /'dженарус/
geography 78 /'dʒi'grәфти/
German 41 /'dʒәman/
Germany 41 /'dʒәmanі/
get (arrive/become/fetch/obtain/buy/receive) 21
get a move on 18
get away 89
get better/worse/hot, etc. 21
get by 17
get changed 21
get divorced 21
get dressed 7, 21, 56
get home 48
get in 62
get in touch with 99
get in(to) a car 13, 61
get into bed 51
get lost 21, 88
get married (to) 14, 21, 47
get off/on (a bus) 13, 62
get on (make progress) 21
get on (with sb.) 16, 21
get out (of a car) 62
get over (an illness) 16
get ready 21
get rid of 21
get through (make contact) 76
get through (finish) 16
get through (pass an exam) 16
get to know 21
get to sleep 48
get to work 48
get undressed 7, 21
get up 21, 48
giraffe 40 /'ɡәraфі/
girlfriend 47 /'ɡәlfrend/
give (a lecture) 79 /'ɡіv/
give one's regards to sb. 20
give sb. a hand 20
give sb. a push 10
give sb. a ring 10, 20, 76
give sb. the sack 65
give up sth. 16, 28, 69
glamour 68 /'ɡләмә/
glamorous 68 /'ɡләмәрос/
glance (at) (n, v) 45 /ɡләнәс/
global warming 85 /ɡлоәｂәl ˈwәмин/
gloves 2 /'ɡлдәвз/
go (travel) 22
go (leads to / takes you) 22
go (out) for a walk/meal/drink etc. 22
go ahead 18
go along here 61
go bald/deaf/grey/mad 22
go bankrupt 22
go into hospital 78
go off (explode / go bad / ring) 16

go on a (training) course 65
go on a diet 10
go on a tour of ... 88
go on holiday 89
go out 88
go out with sb. 47
go shopping/sightseeing etc. 22, 57

go to bed 48

go to church/school/college 78
go to sleep 51
go to university 47, 78, 79
go up (increase) 16
go upmarket/downmarket 68
goat 40 /'ɡәут/
gold 39 /'ɡәuld/
golf /'ɡәlf/ ~ course 70
good (at) 14
good fun 72

good-looking 12, 43
good luck 26
go good morning/afternoon/evening/night 26
good value 68
goods 66 /'ɡудз/
gorilla 40 /ɡәr'лиә/
government 82 /ɡәвәнмент/
gradual(ly) 67 /'ɡрадәүәл/
grade 79 /'ɡрадәүәт/
granite 46 /'ɡранәдә/
grandeau 46
grandmother 46 /'ɡранәдәә/
grape 58 /'грәпсп/
grapes 58 /'грәпфәкіс/
grass 39 /'грәс/
great 13, 30, 92 /'грәт/
Greece 41 /'грәис/
Greek 41 /'грәик/
green beans 58
greengrocer 57 /'ɡриәнґроәсә/
greengrocery 57 /'ɡриәнґроәси/
greens 85 /'грәңз/
greetings 26 /'грәтпің/
grey 93 /'грәй/
grill 59 /'грил/
gripping 72 /'грипәп/
ground 39 /'грәунд/
ground floor 49
group (collection) 94 /'груәп/
group (pop group) 73
grow 39, 67 /'грәо/
grow up 17, 47 /'грәо/
guess (n, v) 10 /'гезз/
guest house 87 /'гезт/
guidebook 88 /'гайдбәк/
guilty 80 /'гилті/
guitar 69, 73 /'гітә/
guitarist 73 /'гітәәріст/
guns 84 /'ганз/
guy 99 /'гай/
guys (US) 98 /'гәрз/

hair 27 /'гәрә/
hairy (chest) 43 /'гәәри/
half 91 /'гәәрф/
half board 87
hand 42 /'гәәнд/
hand luggage 86
handsome 43 /'гәәнәәм/
handy 99 /'гәәнди/
hang on 18
hang sth. up 56
hangover 54 /'гәңәуә/
happiness 8, 45 /'гәпәпінә/
Happy Birthday / Christmas
New Year 26

hard disk 77
hard luck 26
hard work 13
hardly 32 /'гәәлді/
hardly ever 32
hardware 77 /'гәәдвезә/

254 English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
hardworking 44  
/ˈhaʊdərˌwɜːkɪŋ/  
harmful 85  /ˈhɑːmfəl/  
harvest 39  /ˈhɑːvɪst/  
hate 28  /hæt/  
have a baby 19  
have a break 48  
have a dream 10  
have a drink 19  
have a go 22  
have a good/great time 19, 88  
have a lie-in 48  
have a look 10, 50  
have a nice weekend 26  
have a party 19  
have a rest 10, 19, 48  
have a shower/bath/wash/shave 19, 48  
have a word (with) 99  
have a(n) early/late night 48  
have breakfast 48  
have friends for dinner 48  
have something to eat 19  
have something/Nothing in common 35  
hay fever 54  /ˈheɪ fɪvə/  
head (v) 70  /hɪd/  
headache 54  /ˈhɛdərk/  
headline 74  /ˈhɛdəln/  
headphones 27  /ˈhɛdfoʊns/  
health 54  /helθ/  
healthy (economy) 67  
/ˈhelθi/  
hear 95  /hɪər/  
hearing 95  /ˈhɪərɪŋ/  
heart 54  /hɑrt/  
heart attack 54  
heat (v) 49  /hɪt/  
heat (n) 38  /hɪt/  
heavy rain 13, 38  
heavy smoker 13  
heavy traffic 13  
Hebrew 41  /ˈhɪbru/  
hedge 60  /hɛdʒ/  
heel 42  /hɪl/  
height 43, 92  /hæt/  
held up 23  /hɛld/  
help yourself 24  
helpful 9  /ˈhelpfəl/  
hepatitis 54  /hɪpətɪtɪs/  
high 92  /hai/  
high school (US) 98  
highlighter pen 6  /ˈhɪlətər/  
highlights 75  /ˈhɪlətaɪts/  
highly (unlikely) 13  /ˈhælɪli/  
highway (US) 98  /ˈhæwaɪ/  
hijacking 84  /ˈhɪdəzəŋkiŋ/  
hiking 69, 89  /ˈhækɪŋ/  
hips 42  /hɪps/  
hire 86  /hɪər/  
historical monuments 88  
history 78  /ˈhɪstərɪ/  
history of art 79  
hit 70  /hɪt/  
hit (affect badly) 74  /hɪt/  
hobby 69  /ˈhɒbi/  
hockey 70  /hɒkɪ/  
hold (an election) 82  /həʊld/  
hold 95  /həʊld/  
hole punch (n, v) 6  /həul/  
holiday pay 63  /ˈhɔldədi/  
Holland 41  /ˈhɔlənd/  
home news 74  
homeless 9  /ˈhɑːməlɪs/  
homesick 3  /ˈhəʊməsɪk/  
homework 27  /ˈhəʊmwɜːk/  
honest 44  /ˈhɒnɪst/  
hoofer 51  /ˈhuːvr/  
hope 28  /hɑop/  
horror film 72  /ˈhɔrə/  
hospitality 23  /ˈhɒspɪtəlɪti/  
hostage 84  /ˈhɒstɪdʒ/  
household (goods) 57  
/ˈhəʊshəʊld/  
housework 3, 27, 51  
/ˈhəʊswɜːk/  
How about ...? 24  
How are you getting on? 21  
How are you? 26  
How do I get to ...? 87  
How do you do? 26  
How do you feel about ...? 25  
How do you pronounce ...? 6  
How do you spell ...? 6  
How do you use ...? 6  
How long/tall/wide is ...? 92  
How much does he/she weigh? 43  
How tall is he/she? 43  
How’s it going? 22  
however 34  /həʊˈevə/  
huge 30, 49  /hjuːdʒ/  
human resources 85  
/hjuːmən rɪˈzɔːsɪz/  
humid 38  /ˈhjuːmɪd/  
humidity 38  /ˈhjuːmɪdəti/  
hundred 91  /ˈhʌndrəd/  
hunting 69  /ˈhʌntɪŋ/  
hurricane 37, 38  /ˈhɜːrɪkən/  
hurry up 16  /ˈhʌrɪ/  
hurt (oneself) 54  /hɑrt/  
hyphen 4  /ˈhæfən/  
I agree with you 25  
I beg your pardon 23, 26  
I don’t mind 24  
I don’t think ... 25  
I regret to inform you 99  
I think you’re right 25  
I was wondering if ...? 24  
I won’t be long 23  
I’d love to 24  
I’d prefer to / I’d rather ... 24  
I’ll clear it up 23  
I’ll leave it 57  
I’ll sort it out 23  
I’ll take it/them 57  
I’m (terribly/very/so) sorry 23  
I’m afraid I can’t 24  
I’m afraid not 24  
I’m being served 57  
I’m just looking 57  
I’m looking for a ... 57  
I’m sorry I’m late 23  
i.e. 100 /ɪ ə:/  
ic(e)y 38  /ˈaɪsɪ/  
ic 38  /ˈaɪs/  
ic hockey 70  /ˈaɪs/  
icons 77  /ˈaɪkənz/  
identity card 83  /ˈaɪdɛntətɪ kɑrd/  
idiom 4  /ˈɪdɪəm/  
if you like 24  /ɪf/  
illegal 7, 80, 81  /ɪˈlɪgəl/  
illegible 7  /ˈlɛdʒəbəl/  
ilness 54  /ˈɪlnəs/  
image 68  /ˈɪmɪdʒ/
lane 61 /lein/
language lab 100 /læŋglæb/
laptop 77 /læptəp/
laser printer 77 /'læzər prɪntər/ 
laser printer 77 /'læzər prɪntər/
last (v) 79 /lɑːst/
laptop 77 /læptəp/
lift 79, 87, 98 /lɪft/ 
lift (colour) 93 /lɑːt/
lifting 38 /'lætɪŋ/ 
like 28, 93 /laɪk/ 
line (phone) 76 /lain/ 
line (US) 62 /lain/ 
line judge 70 
lion 40 /laiən/ 
lips 42 /lɪps/ 
listen (to) 14, 95 /'lɪsən/ 
literature 73 /'lɪtərətʃər/ 
live (adj) 75 /lɪv/ 
lively 88 /lɪvli/ 
liver 54 /ˈlɪvər/ 
living room 50 /ˈlɪvɪŋ/ 
loan 67 /ləʊn/ 
lobster 58 /ˈlɒbstər/ 
local call 76 /ˈləʊkəl/ 
lock 7 /lɒk/ 
long 92 /lɒŋ/ 
long distance call 76 
lo (at) 95 /ləʊ/ 
look after sb./sth. 16, 64 
look round (e.g. the shops) 88 
look up (a word) 6, 16 
looks + adj; looks like + noun 95 
lorry 61, 62 /ˈlɔːri/ 
lose (a game) 3, 71 /luːz/ 
lose sth. (e.g. money) 52 
lose weight 3 
loss 67 /lɒs/ 
lounge 50 /ˈlɔʊndʒ/ 
love (tennis) 71, 91 /lʌv/ 
love 28 /lʌv/ 
luggage 27, 86 /ˈlʌɡɪdʒ/ 
lung 54 /lʌŋ/ 
lung cancer 54 
luxury 68 /ˈlʌkʃəri/ 
luxurious 68 /ˈlʌksəriəs/

MA 79 /em ɪt/ 
machine 5 /məˈʃɪn/ 
mad about sb./sth. 69 
main course 59 
main road 61 
maintain 1 /meɪntəin/ 
majority 82, 91 /məˈdʒɔrəti/ 
make a decision 2, 19 /mɛk/ 
make a loss 67 
make a meal of 19 
make a mess 2 
make a mistake 2, 13, 19 
make a profit 67 
make coffee 50 
make do (with) 18 
make friends 19 
make it 18 
make money 19 
make my own 
breakfast/dinner 48 
make my own clothes 69 
make notes 79 
make (sb. do sth.) 28 
make up (a story) 17 
make up your mind 18 
manage (be able to) 28 /ˈmænɪdʒ/ 
management 8 /ˈmænɪdʒmənt/ 
manager (sport) 70 /ˈmænɪdʒər/ 
Mandarin (also Cantonese) 41 /ˈmændərɪn/ 
manslaughter 81 /ˈmæntsloʊtə/ 
manual 64 /ˈmænjuəl/ 
manufacture 66 /ˈmæŋjʊˈfæktʃər/ 
Many Happy Returns 26 
map 88 /meɪp/ 
march (walk) (n, v) 45 /mɑːtʃ/ 
marital status 83 /ˈmərtɪəl steɪtəs/ 
market 88 /ˈmɑːkɪt/ 
marketing /ˈmɑːkɪtɪŋ/ 
-wix 68 
market leader/research/share 68 /ˈmɑːkɪt/ 
marriage 47 /ˈmɑːriɪdʒ/ 
magnificent 80 /ˈmɑːnɪflɪk/ 
marvellous 30 /ˈmɑːvələs/ 
mass-produced 68 /ˈmæsprəˈdʒʌst/ 
match 71 /mætʃ/ 
maths (mathematics) 78, 100 /mæθs/
maybe 25 /ˈmiəbi/  
mean (adj) 44 /ˈmi:n/  
mean (v) (intend/plan) 28  
/mi:n/  
mechanic 64 /ˈmiːkənɪk/  
medicine 79 /ˈmedsən/  
medium (meat) 59  
/miːtʃəm/  
medium-height 43  
meetings 63 /ˈmɛtɪŋz/  
melon 58 /ˈmɛlən/  
menu 59 /ˈmɛnuː/  
message 76 /ˈmesidʒ/  
mist 39 /metəl/  
Mexican 41 /ˈmeksɪkən/  
Mexico 41 /ˈmeksɪkəʊ/  
mice 40 /ˈmiːsəs/  
mid twenties/thirties etc. 47  
middle age 47  
middle name 46  
middle of the road 82  
million 91 /ˈmiːljan/  
mind 28 /mænd/  
mind the step / your head 96  
morning 39 /ˈmɔːrnɪŋ/  
minor (offence) 80 /ˈmɔːnə/  
minority 91 /ˈmɔːnərɪ/  
minus 38, 91 /ˈmɔːnəs/  
mirror 51 /ˈmɪrər/  
miserable 44 /ˈmɪzərəbəl/  
missread 7 /mɪsˈrɪd/  
miss a lesson 13 /mɪs/  
miss a person 13  
miss the bus 13, 52, 62  
misunderstand 7  
/mɪsənˈstånd/  
mobile (phone) 76  
/ˈmɔːbəl/  
mother 77 /ˈmʌðə/  
motormile 70 /ˈmɔːtərbaik/  
motorway 61 /ˈmɔːtəraɪ/  
mountain 37 /ˈmeɪntən/  
mountain range 37  
mouse (computer)  
~ mat 77 /ˈmeɪs/  
mouse (animal) 40 /ˈmeɪs/  
moustache 43 /ˈmɒstəʃ/  
moving 72 /ˈmʌvɪŋ/  
MP 100 /em pɪt/  
MPhil 79 /em faɪl/  
Mr 100 /mɪstə/  
Mrs 100 /mɪstiz/  
Ms, 100 /mæz/  
multiplication 91  
/mʌltɪplɪˈkeɪʃən/  
multiply 91 /ˈmʌltɪplai/  
murder (n, v) 10, 81  
/ˈmɜːda/  
murderer 81 /ˈmɜːdər/  
muscular 43 /ˈmʌskələ/  
muscle 58 /ˈmʌskrəm/  
music 73 /ˈmjuːzɪk/  
musical 9, 72 /ˈmjuːzɪkal/  
musical instrument 69, 73  
mussel 58 /ˈmɑːsəl/  
narrow 92 /ˈnæəʊ/  
natural (resources) 85  
/ˈnætʃərəl/  
navy 64 /ˈneɪvi/  
neat 31 /niə/  
neatly 32 /niəli/  
necessary 5 /ˈnesəsəri/  
necesitate 42 /nɛk/  
necesitate 56 /ˈnekəsəti/  
neither 35 /ˈniːðə/  
nephew 46 /ˈneɪfjuː/  
net 70 /net/  
ever 32 /ˈnevə/  
never mind 18, 23  
newsagent 57 /ˈnjuːzəˈɛdʒənt/  
nice to meet you 26  
niece 46 /ˈnɪts/  
night life 60, 88  
nil 71, 91 /nil/  
nine-to-five job 63  
no exit/parking/smoking/  
vacancies 96  
nod 42 /nɒd/  
noisy 49, 60 /ˈnɔɪz/  
north-east/west 12  
north/south pole 37  
notebook 6 /ˈnəʊtbɒk/  
notes (money) 53 /ˈnəʊts/  
note (n) 96 /ˈnəʊtɪs/  
noteboard 66 /ˈnəʊtʃˈbaːd/  
nought 91 /ˈnɔːt/  
noun 4 /ˈnəʊn/  
novel 73 /ˈnʌvəl/  
novelist 73 /ˈnʌvəlɪst/  
nurse 64 /nɜːs/  
nursery school 78 /ˈnɜːsərɪ/  
occasionally 32 /əˈkɛlsənli/  
ocean 37 /ˈəʊʃən/  
odd 91 /ɔd/  
of course 24  
off-hand 18  
offence 80 /ˈɒfəns/  
offer 28 /ˈɒfa/  
often 32 /ˈɒfən/  
oh 91 /əʊ/  
OHT 6 /ˌəʊ ɪt/  
oil 58 /nəl/  
old age 47  
old friend 46  
on (a day) 90  
on (the table) 31  
on business 15  
on condition that 35  
on foot 15  
on holiday 15  
on one’s own 15, 48, 81  
on purpose 15  
on strike 15  
on the ground/first floor 49  
on the left/right 82  
on the other hand 34  
on the phone 15, 76  
on the radio 15  
on the sofa 50  
on time 15  
on TV 15  
only child 46  
OPEC 100 /ˈoʊ pɛk/  
opera 73 /ˈɒpərə/  
operate (on) 64 /ˈɒpərət/  
operator 76 /ˈɒpərətə/  
optite 4 /ˈɒpətɪt/
optimistic 44 /'optə'mistɪk/
orange 58 /'ɒrɪndʒ/
orchestra 73 /'ɔːkstrə/
order 29, 66, 87 /'ɔːdər/
ordinary-looking 43
otherwise 35 /'ʌðəraɪz/
out loud 1
out of 31
out of order 52, 96
out of work 15, 65
outbreak 84 /'auːtbrɛk/
-oval 93 /'əʊvəl/
oven 50 /'ɔvən/
over 31 /'əʊvər/
overcharge 7 /'əʊvər′tʃɑːdʒ/overcoat 56 /'əʊvəkəʊt/
overdo 7 /'əʊvərdəʊ/overhead locker 86
oversleep 7, 48 /'əʊvəslɛp/overslept 61 /'əʊvəslɛpt/
overtime 63 /'əʊvərtaɪm/
overweight 43 /'əʊvərwɛt/owing to 36 /ˈɔʊŋ tu/
own 49 /ˈəʊn/
ozone layer 85 /'əʊzos ˈleər/
pack (a suitcase) 7 /'pæk/ pack (v) 66 /'pækɪdʒ/packed 30, 88 /'pækt/
packet 94 /'pækɪt/
pain 54 /ˈpeɪn/ painful 9, 54, 55 /'peɪnfəl/
painless 9 /'peɪnləs/
painter 73 /'peɪntə/ painting 73 /'peɪntɪŋ/
pair (of) 94 /ˈpeər/ palace 88 /ˈpeɪləs/
pale 43, 93 /'peɪl/ pants (US) 98 /ˈpeɪnts/
paperwork 63, 66 /'peɪpərwɜːk/
park (v) 61 /ˈpɑːk/ parking lot (US) 98 parking meter 11part-time 12, 65 partly 25 /ˈpɑːtli/
partner 46 /ˈpeɪtnər/ pass a ball 70 /ˈpæs/
pass an exam 79
pass through customs 86
passenger 62 /ˈpæsændər/
passport 83 /ˈpɑːspɔːrt/
passport control 86past 31 /ˈpɑːst/ paste 77 /ˈpeɪst/ path 49 /ˈpɑːθ/ pattern 93 /ˈpeɪtən/ pavement 61 /ˈpɛɪvmənt/
pay (for) 53 /ˈpeɪ/ pay back 67 pay by cheque/credit card 57pay interest 67 pay rise 65PC 100 /ˈpɪ sɪ:/peace 84 /ˈpiːs/ peace and quiet 89peace settlement 84peace talks 84peaceful 60 /ˈpiːsful/peach 58 /ˈpiːtʃ/ peas 58 /ˈpiːz/ pedestrian 61 /ˈpiːdɪstrɪən/
piano 73 /ˈpiənəʊ/ pick 39 /ˈpɪk/ pick sth./sb. up (collect) 16, 99pick sth. up (gather) 16picnic 89 /ˈpɪknɪk/ piece 94 /ˈpiːs/ pig 40 /ˈpɪɡ/pillow 51 /ˈpiːloʊ/pilot 62, 64 /ˈpaɪlət/pinch (steal) 99 /ˈpɪntʃ/ pineapple 58 /ˈpeɪnəpəl/ pink 93 /ˈpɪŋk/piss 99 /ˈpiːs/pitch 70 /ˈpɪtʃ/place 88 /ˈpleɪs/plain 43 /ˈpleɪn/plain 100 /ˈpleɪn/平台 62 /ˈpleɪtfɔːm/ play (n) 72, 73play a game 71 /ˈpleɪ/ play a musical instrument 69play cards 48, 69player 70 /ˈpleɪə/playroom 50 /ˈpleɪrʊm/playwright 73 /ˈpleɪrɪt/pleasant 44 /ˈpleɪzənt/please do not disturb 96please do not feed the animals 96please queue other side 96plenty 60 /ˈplɛntɪ/plug 6 /ˈplʌɡ/plug sth. in 6, 75plumber 5, 64 /ˈplʌmər/plural noun 4 /ˈplɔːrəl/plus 91 /ˈplʌs/PM 100 /piː em/pocket 56 /ˈpɒkɪt/poem 73 /ˈpɔːm/poet 73 /ˈpəʊt/poin 100 /ˈpoʊt/point (at sth.) 45 /ˈpɔɪnt/ point (decimal) 91 /ˈpɔɪnt/police force 64 /ˈpɒliːs/ police officer 64policy 82 /ˈpəʊləsi/polish 51 /ˈpɒliʃ/polite 3 /ˈpələt/
run out (of sth.) 16, 52, 83, 84
runny nose 54 /ˈræni/ run
runway 86 /ˈrænwei/
rushed (to hospital) 55
rush-hour 61 /ˈræʃaʊ/
Russia 41 /ˈrʌʃə/
Russian 41 /ˈrʌʃən/
sack 65 /ˈsæk/
sadness 45 /ˈsædnəs/
safe (n) 81 /ˈsefl/ sail
sailor 64 /ˈseilə/
salad 58 /ˈsæləd/
salary 63 /ˈsɛləri/
sales 68 /ˈseilz/
sales figures/forecast/
manager/target 68
screen (cinema) 72 /ˈskrɪn/
sculptor 73 /ˈskʌlptə/
sculpture 73 /ˈskʌlpta/
sea 37 /ˈsiː/
seafood 58 /ˈsɪfjuːd/
seaside 89 /ˈsɪsid/ season 87 /ˈsɪzən/
seat 3 /ˈsɪt/
seats (in parliament) 82
second (n) 90 /ˈsɛkənd/
second (ly) 33 /ˈsɛkəndli/
second-hand 12
secondary (school) 78 /ˈsɛkərdrɪ/
see 95 /siː/
see (understand / find out) 20
see you later/soon 26 /siː/
seem 28 /sɪm/
seldom 32 /ˈsɛldəm/
self-confident 44
self-defence 81
self-portrait 73
self-study 1
semester (US) 98 /ˈstɛrmətə/
semi-circle 93
send off (a letter) 16 /ˈsɛnd/
senses 95 /ˈsɛnsəz/
sensible 44 /ˈsɛnsəstəl/ sensitive 44 /ˈsɛntstɪv/
sentence (prison) 80 /ˈsɛntəns/ series 75 /ˈsɛriəz/
serious (illness) 13 /ˈstɛriəs/
set 71 /ˈset/
set the alarm 51
shade 93 /ˈʃeɪd/ shake 42 /ʃeɪk/
shake hands 42
shallow 92 /ˈʃælu/ shape 93 /ʃeɪp/
shark 40 /ʃa:k/ sharp(ly) 67 /ˈʃɑːpli/
sheet (of paper) 94 /ʃeɪt/ shading 84 /ˈʃeɪnd/ shiftwork 63 /ˈʃɪftwɜːk/ shirt 56 /ʃɜːt/ shoot 55 /ʃuːt/
shop assistant 57
shop window 57
shoplift 81 /ˈʃɒplift/
shoal 81 /ʃəʊl/  
shoplifting 81  
shopping centre 57, 60  
shopping list 57  
short 43, 92 /ʃɔrt/  
short story 73  
short-cut 18  
short-sleeved 12  
shorts 27 /ʃɔrts/  
shoulders 42 /ʃɔuldəz/  
shout (at sb. / to sb.) 14, 45 /ʃɔut/  
show 29 /ʃəʊ/  
show sb. (a)round 66 /ʃəʊ/  
shower (rain) 38 /ʃəʊə/  
shower (wash) 51 /ʃəʊə/  
shovery 38 /ʃəʊər/  
shrimps 58 /ʃrɪmpz/  
shy 44 /ʃai/  
sick pay 63  
sidewalk (US) 98 /ˈsaɪdwaːk/  
sight 95 /saɪt/  
sightseeing 88 /ˈsaɪtˌsiːɪŋ/  
sightseeing tour 88  
sign 83 /saɪn/  
signature 83 /ˈsaɪɡnərɪə/  
silence: exam in progress 96  
silent(ly) 1 /ˈsaɪləntli/  
silver 39 /ˈsɪlva/  
similar (to) 8, 14, 35 /ˈsɪmələ/  
similarity 8 /ˈsɪməlærəti/  
since 36 /səns/  
since 90 /səns/  
singer 73 /ˈsɪŋə/  
single room 87  
single-parent family 46  
sink 50 /sɪŋk/  
sister-in-law 11, 46  
sit down 16 /sɪt/  
sitting room 11  
size 56 /saɪz/  
skiing 70 /ˈskiːŋ/  
skilled 64 /skɪld/  
skinnier 43 /ˈskɪnɪə/  
skirt 56 /skɜːt/  
slang 99 /slænd/  
slaughter 39 /ˈslɔːtə/  
sleeves 56 /ˈslɛvz/  
slice 94 /slaɪs/  
slightly 32 /ˈslətɪli/  
slim 43 /slɪm/  
sling 55 /slɪŋ/  
slopes 70 /slaʊps/  
slow (boring) 72 /slaʊ/  
slow(ly) 67  
small talk 18  
smell (n, v) 10, 95 /smel/  
smells + adj; smells like + noun 95  
smile (n, v) 2, 10, 42 /smail/  
smoke 85 /smɔɪk/  
snack 48 /snæk/  
snail 40 /snæil/  
snake 40 /ˈsneɪk/  
sneakers (US) 98 /ˈsnɪkəz/  
sneeze 54 /ˈsnɪz/  
so (that) 36  
soap 51 /soʊp/  
soap opera 75  
soccer (US) 70 /ˈsɒkə/  
socialism 82 /ˈsəʊʃəlɪzəm/  
socialist 82 /ˈsəʊʃəlɪst/  
sociology 79 /ˈsəʊjələdʒi/  
socket 6 /ˈsɒkɪt/  
s󰂂fa 50 /ˈsɑːfə/  
soft drink/voice 13  
software 77 /ˈsɔftrweə/  
soil 39 /soɪl/  
sold out 96  
soldier 64 /ˈsɔldər/  
solos (n, v) 45 /sɛlə/  
ostar (film) 72 /ˈstɑːr/  
star (in the sky) 37 /ˈstɑː:/  
start a car 13 /stɑːt/  
start a family 13  
starter 59 /ˈstɑːtə/  
starving 30 /ˈstɑːvɪŋ/  
state system 78 /stɛt/  
station (TV) 75 /ˈstæʃən/  
stationery 57 /ˈstæʃənəri/  
statue 88 /ˈstætju/  
status 68 /ˈstætəs/  
stay (at school) 78 /stɛt/  
stay in 17, 48 /stɛt/  
steady/steadily 67 /ˈstɛdi/  
/ˈstɛdɪli/  
steal 81 /stɛl/  
steel 39 /stɛl/  
step 89 /step/  
stepfather/mother 46  
steps 49 /stɛps/  
sterling 53 /ˈstɛrliŋ/  
sticks 70 /stɪks/  
spell (e.g. of hot weather) 38  
spelling 8 /ˈspelɪŋ/  
spend (money) on 14, 53, 88  
spicy 59 /ˈspaɪsi/  
spider 40 /ˈspʌdər/  
spikes 70 /spəks/  
spill 52 /spɪl/  
split (up) 47 /splɪt/  
spray 81, 85 /spreɪ/  
spreadsheet 77 /ˈspredʃɛt/  
square 93 /ˈskwɛə/  
squash 70 /ˈskwɔʃ/  
St. 100 /ˈstriːt/ /ˈsent/  
stab 55 /ˈstæb/  
stability 67 /ˈstæbɪləti/  
stadium 70 /ˈstædiəm/  
stage 72 /ˈsteɪdʒ/  
stain 52 /ˈstɛn/  
stairs 27, 49 /ˈsteɪəz/  
stalls 72 /ˈsteɪlz/  
stamp (v) 83 /stɛmp/  
stakes 69 /stɛmps/  
stand up 16 /stænd/  
standard 66 /ˈstændəd/  
standard of living 53  
scare (n, v) 45 /ˈstreɪpə/  
star (film) 72 /ˈstɑːr/  
star (in the sky) 37 /ˈstɑː:/  
start a car 13 /stɑːt/  
start a family 13  
starter 59 /ˈstɑːtə/  
starving 30 /ˈstɑːvɪŋ/  
state system 78 /stɛt/  
station (TV) 75 /ˈstæʃən/  
stationery 57 /ˈstæʃənəri/  
statue 88 /ˈstætju/  
status 68 /ˈstætəs/  
stay (at school) 78 /stɛt/  
stay in 17, 48 /stɛt/  
steady/steadily 67 /ˈstɛdi/  
/ˈstɛdɪli/  
steal 81 /stɛl/  
steel 39 /stɛl/  
step 89 /step/  
stepfather/mother 46  
steps 49 /stɛps/  
sterling 53 /ˈstɛrliŋ/  
sticks 70 /stɪks/
still 34 /stɪl/
stocks and shares 64
stomach 54 /ˈstəmək/
 stomache-ache 54
 /ˈstəməkətʃ/ 
stool 50 /ˈstʊl/
 store 66 /ˈstɔːr/
 straight 43 /streɪt/
 strawberry 58 /ˈstrɔːberi/
stress 4 /stres/
stressful 60 /ˈstreʃfʊl/
 strolled 93 /ˈstreɪpt/
est (n, v) 45, 89 /ˈstreɪəl/
strong 44 /ˈstrɒŋ/
strong accent/coffee 13
study (n) 50 /ˈstʌdi/ 
stuff 97 /ˈstʌf/ 
stupid 8 /ˈstjuːpid/ 
stupidity 8 /ˈstjuːpitəti/ 
subject 78 /ˈsʌbdʒekt/ 
titles 72 /ˈsəbtaɪtəlz/ 
subtraction 91 /ˈsəbtrækʃən/ 
suburbs 60 /ˈsəbɜːbズ/ 
subway (US) 98 /ˈsəbweɪ/
suffer (from) 14 /ˈsəfər/ 
suffix 4 /ˈsəfɪks/ 
suggest 29 /ˈsədʒest/ 
suggestion 24 /ˈsədʒestʃən/ 
suit (v) 3 /sət/ (n) 56
suitable 9 /ˈsətəbəl/ 
sunbath 89 /ˈsʌnbɑːθ/ 
sunblock 89 /ˈsʌnblɒk/ 
sunburn 89 /ˈsʌnbɜrn/ 
sunglasses 11, 27
 /ˈsæŋgləsɪz/ 
sunny 38 /ˈsəni/ 
suntan lotion 89 /ˈsʌntæn ˈləʊʃən/ 
supermarket 57
 /ˈsʌpəmɑːkət/ 
supervisor 66 /ˈsʌpəvaɪzə/ 
supplies 84 /ˈsəpəlaɪz/ 
surgeon 64 /ˈsɜːdʒən/ 
surname 46 /ˈsɜːnəm/ 
surprising (at/by) 14, 30
 /ˈsərprəzɪd/ 
surprising 30 /ˈsərprəzɪŋ/ 
swap (places) 6 /ˈswɒp/
Sweden 41 /ˈswɪdən/ 
Swedish 41 /ˈswɪdiʃ/ 
sweet 59 /swɪt/ 
swimming 70 /ˈswɪmɪŋ/
~ costume 70
Swiss 41 /ˈswɪs/ 
switch sth. on/off/over 75
 /ˈswɪtʃ/ 
Switzerland 41 /ˈswɪtsərˌlænd/ 
swollen 55 /ˈswəʊlən/ 
syllable 4 /ˈsɪləbl/ 
symptom 54 /ˈsɪmpətəm/ 
synonym 4 /ˈsɪnənɪm/ 
T-shirt 11
table tennis 11, 70 /ˈteɪbl/ 
tabloid 74 /ˈtæbləɪd/ 
take 22, 90 /teɪk/ 
take a bus/train/taxi 19
take a decision 2, 19
take a photograph 2, 19
take a shower 2, 19
take an exam 19
take control (of) 84
take it in turns 18
take notes 79
take off (leave the ground) 16, 17, 86
take off (remove) 16, 56
take over 65
take photographs 88
take place 82
take the first/second turning on the left/right 61
take time 2
take up (a hobby) 69
take-off (n) 86 /ˈteɪkfəf/ 
talks 74 /təlks/ 
tall 43, 92 /ˈtɔːl/ 
tan 89 /ˈtæn/ 
tartan 93 /ˈtɑːtən/ 
taste (n, v) 10, 95 /teɪst/ 
tastes + adj; tastes like + noun 95
tasty 59 /ˈteɪsti/ 
taxi cut 67
taxi (v) 86 /ˈteɪksi/ 
taxi rank 62
team 70 /ˈtiːm/ 
teenager 47 /ˈtiːniɑːdʒə/ 
television directory 76
 /ˈtɛlɪfəʊn ˈdɪriktəri/ 
tell 29 /tel/ 
tell the joke/story 13
tell the truth 13
telly 100 /ˈtelɪ/ 
temperature 38 /ˈtemprərəʊ/ 
temple 88 /ˈtempəl/ 
ten-pound note 53
ten-year-old (boy) 12	
tender 59 /ˈtenəd/ 
tennis 70 /ˈtenɪs/ 
tense 44 /ˈtenʃən/ 
tent 89 /ˈtent/ 
term 78 /ˈtɜːm/ 
terminal building 86
 /ˈtɜːrnəl ˈbɪldɪŋ/ 
terrible (pain) 54 /ˈterəbəl/ 
terribly (sorry) 13 /ˈterəbli/ 
terrific 30, 99 /ˈterɪfɪk/ 
terrified/terrifying 30
 /ˈtərɪfɪd/ /ˈtərɪfənɪŋ/ 
territory 84 /ˈterɪtɔrɪ/ 
terrorism 84 /ˈterərɪzəm/ 
terrorist 84 /ˈterərist/ 
textbook 6
Thai 41 /ˈtʰaɪ/ 
Thailand 41 /ˈtailənd/ 
thank you (very much) 23
thanks 23 /θæŋks/ 
that's a good idea 24
that's to say (i.e.) 100
that's true 25
that's very kind of you 23
cheat 81 /ˈθɛft/ 
therefore 36 /ðəˈfoʊr/ 
that's (stupid) 34 /ˈθaːptɪd/ 
that's (very) 34 /ˈθaːptɪd/
though 72 /θəʊ/ 
thing(s) 97
third 91 /θɜːd/ 
though 34 /ˈθaʊ/ 
thoughtful 9 /ˈθɔːtfəl/
thoughtless 9 /ˈθɔːtləs/
thousand 91 /ˈθaʊzənd/ 
three-quarters 91
 /ˈθɜːkɔːtʃərz/ 
thriller 72 /ˈθrɪlər/ 
through 5, 31 /θruː/ 
throughout 90 /θruˈɑːt/ 
throw 70 /θrəʊ/ 
throw away 85
to a certain/large extent 25
to begin with 33
to make matters worse 18
to start with 33
toddler 47 /'tədə:/
toe 42 /təʊ/
toilet 51 /'tələt/
tomato 58 /'təmətəʊ/
too (+ adj) 56
too (as well) 34
too (far) to (walk) 92
toothache 54 /'tuːθeɪk/
touch (v) 95 /tʃɑːk/
tough 59, 81 /fl/}
touristy 88 /'tʊərɪsti/ 
towards 31 /'təwərds/
towel 51 /'taʊəl/
toys 57 /'taɪz/
track 70 /træk/ 
tractor 60 /'træktər/ 
traffic 60 /'træfɪk/ 
traffic jam 11, 61
traffic lights 11, 61
traffic warden 11
trainee 65 /'treɪnɪ/ 
training /'trænɪŋ/ ~ course 65
training shoes 70
volcano 37 /ˈvɒlkənəʊ/
volleyball 70 /ˈvɒllibɔːl/
vomit 54 /vəmɪt/
vote (for) 82 /vəʊt/
wast 42 /wɛst/
wait (for) 14 /wɛt/
waiting room 11
wake up 16, 17, 48
want 28, 29 /wɒnt/
war /wɔː/ ~ zone 84
war film 72
wardrobe 51 /ˈwɔːdrəʊb/
warehouse 66 /ˈweɪhraʊs/
warn 29 /wɔrn/
warning 96 /ˈwɔːnɪŋ/
wash 48 /wɔʃ/
washable 9 /wɔʃəbəl/
washbasin 51 /ˈwɔʃbəsɪn/
washing machine 11, 50
washing-up 48
waste 53, 85 /wɛst/
wastepaper basket 66
watch 95 /wɔtʃ/
watch out 26
water (v) 39 /ˈwɔtər/
wave 45 /weɪv/
waves 89 /weɪvz/
wavy 43 /ˈweɪvɪ/ 
weak 8, 44 /wɛk/
weakness 8 /ˈwɛknəs/
weapon 55, 81 /ˈweɪpən/
weather 27 /ˈweðər/
weather forecast 74
weekly 74 /ˈwiːkli/ 
weigh 86 /weɪ/
well done 26 /wɛl/
well-directed/known/made/ of/written 12
well-done (meat) 59
western 72 /ˈwɛstən/
whale 40 /weɪl/
what about ...? 24
what do you do? 63
what do you think of ...? 25
what does he/she look like? 43
what does X mean? 6
what shall we do? 24
what size are you?
what size do you take? 92
what do you do for a living? 63
what’s on? 75
what’s the difference between X and Y? 6
what’s the height/width of ...? 92
what’s up? 18, 99
what’s more 34
when 33 /wɛn/
whereas 34 /weɪərɛz/
while 33 /wайл/
whisper (n, v) 45 /ˈhwɪspər
who’s calling? 76
why don’t we ...? 24
wide 92 /wɔɪd/
wide range 60
widow 46 /ˈwɪdəʊ/
widower 46 /ˈwɪdəʊər/
width 92 /wɪðθ/
win 71 /wɪn/
wind 38 /wɪnd/
window shopping 57
windy 38 /wɪndɪ/
marvelous 30 /ˈwɔːvələr/
wood 60 /wʊd/
word processing 77
word processor 77
work (function) 87 /wɜːk/
work 63
work out (calculate) 91
work overtime 63
working hours 63
worry (about) 14 /ˈwɔrɪ/
worth (+ -ing) 53, 88 /wɜːθ/
would you like to ...? 24
wound 55, 84 /wʊnd/
wrist 2, 42 /rɪst/
write (sth. down) 6 /raɪt/
writer 73 /ˈraɪtər/
writing paper 11
wrong 5, 14, 76 /rɒŋ/
wrong number 76
yacht 89 /ˈjɑːt/
yawn 42 /jɔːn/
yellow 10 /ˈjɛln/ 
zebra 40 /ˈzebrə/
zero 91 /ˈziərəʊ/
zoo 40 /zuː/
Acknowledgements

I owe a great debt to Gillian Lazar for the extremely meticulous and valuable comments she has made on every single unit in the book, and also for her continued support and encouragement. Others have reported on parts of the manuscript, and for their valuable and supportive feedback I would also like to thank: Phillip N. Hewitt, Mike McCarthy, Geraldine Mark, Karl E. Schuhmacher, Roy Sprenger, Liz Walter.

Much of the material has been piloted in different parts of the world. I would like to thank Mark Appleby (Barcelona, Spain), Helen Barnes (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Frank Carney (British Council, Pozan, Poland), Cliff Parry (British Council, Athens, Greece), Chris Powell (International House, Pisa, Italy), Sean Power (ELCRA Bell S.A., Geneva, Switzerland), Pat Rich (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Karen Williams (British Council, Barcelona, Spain). Sean Power and Mark Appleby have not only given me very useful feedback but also valuable suggestions for improving the material.

Geraldine Mark has not only commented on the material, she has also edited it, and with remarkable incisiveness, efficiency, and constant good humour. My thanks to her.

At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank Jeanne McCarten for the inspiration behind this project; Nóirín Burke for all her work in organising reports and piloting; and Isabella Wigan for her work in collating the final stages of the project.

On the production side, I would like to thank Randell Harris and Nick Newton for their design, Peter Byatt for his illustrations, and the rest of the team at Cambridge University Press.

Finally my thanks, as always, to Ruth Gairns for her support, advice and encouragement.